Mentor Verification IP Altera Edition AMBA AXI4-Lite User Guide

Software Version 10.4c

January 2016

Mentor Graphics Corporation
8005 S.W. Boeckman Road, Wilsonville, Oregon 97070-7777
Telephone: 503.685.7000
Toll-Free Telephone: 800.592.2210
Website: www.mentor.com
SupportNet: supportnet.mentor.com/

Send Feedback on Documentation: supportnet.mentor.com/doc_feedback_form

Table of Contents

List of Examples

List of Figures

List of Tables

Preface

About This User Guide

This user guide describes the AXI4-Lite application interface (API) of the Mentor® Verification IP (VIP) Altera® Edition (AE) and how it conforms to the *AMBA® AXI™ and ACE™ Protocol Specification*, AXI3™, AXI4™, and AXI4-Lite™, ACE, and ACE-Lite™ Issue E (ARM IHI 0022E).

Note
This release supports only the AMBA AXI3, AXI4, AXI4-Lite, and AXI4-Stream™ protocols. The AMBA ACE protocol is not supported in this release.

AMBA AXI Protocol Specification

The Mentor VIP AE conforms to the *AMBA® AXI™ and ACE™ Protocol Specification*, AXI3™, AXI4™, and AXI4-Lite™, ACE and ACE-Lite™ Issue E (ARM IHI 0022E). For restrictions to this protocol, refer to the section Protocol Restrictions.

This user guide refers to this specification as the "AXI Protocol Specification."

Protocol Restrictions

The Mentor VIP AE supports all but the following features of this AXI Protocol Specification, which gives you a simplified API to create desired protocol stimulus.

BFM Dependencies Between Handshake Signals

Starting a write data phase before its write address phase in a transaction is not supported. However, starting a write data phase simultaneously with its write address phase is supported.

The above statement disallowing a write data phase to start before its write address phase in a transaction modifies the AXI4-Lite Protocol Specification slave write response handshake dependencies diagram, Figure A3-7 in Section A3.3.1, by effectively adding double-headed arrows between AWVALID to WVALID and AWREADY to WVALID, with the provision that they can be simultaneous.

Mentor VIP AE License Requirements

Note
A license is required to access the Mentor Graphics VIP AE Bus Functional Models (BFMs) and Inline Monitor.

- To access the Mentor Graphics VIP AE and upgrade to the Quartus II Subscription Edition software version 15.1 from a previous version, you must regenerate your license file.
- To access the Mentor VIP AE with the Quartus II Web Edition software, you must upgrade to version 15.1 and purchase a Mentor VIP AE seat license by contacting your Altera sales representative.

You can generate and manage license files for Altera software and IP products by visiting the Self-Service Licensing Center of the Altera website.

Supported Simulators

Mentor VIP AE supports the following simulators:

- Mentor Graphics Questa SIM and ModelSim 10.4d
- Synopsys® VCS® and VCS-MX 2015.09 on Linux
- Cadence® Incisive® Enterprise Simulator (IES) 15.10.010 on Linux

Simulator GCC Requirements

Mentor VIP requires that the installation directory of the simulator includes the GCC libraries shown in Table 1. If the installation of the GCC libraries was an optional part of the simulator's installation and the Mentor VIP does not find these libraries, an error message displays similar to the following:

```
ModelSim / Questa Sim
# ** Error: (vsim-8388) Could not find the MVC shared library : GCC not
found in installation directory (/home/user/altera2/14.0/modelsim_ase) for
platform "linux".  Please install GCC version "gcc-4.7.4-linux"
```

Table-1. Simulator GCC Requirements

Simulator	Version	GCC Version(s)	Search Path
Mentor Questa SIM			

Table-1. Simulator GCC Requirements (cont.)

	10.4d	4.7.4 (Linux 32 bit)	<install dir>/gcc-4.7.4-linux
		4.7.4 (Linux 64 bit)	<install dir>/gcc-4.7.4-linux_x86_64
		4.2.1 (Windows 32 bit)	<install dir>/gcc-4.2.1-mingw32vc9
Mentor ModelSim			
	10.4d	4.7.4 (Linux 32 bit)	<install dir>/gcc-4.7.4-linux
		4.7.4 (Linux 64 bit)	<install dir>/gcc-4.7.4-linux_x86_64
		4.2.1 (Windows 32 bit)	<install dir>/gcc-4.2.1-mingw32vc9
Synopsys VCS/VCS-MX			
	2014.03-SP1	4.7.2 (Linux 32 bit)	$VCS_HOME/gnu/linux/4.7.2_32-shared
	or 2014.12		$VCS_HOME/gnu/4.7.2_32-shared
		4.7.2 (Linux 64 bit)	$VCS_HOME/gnu/linux/4.7.2_64-shared
			$VCS_HOME/gnu/4.7.2_64-shared

Note: If you set the environment variable VG_GNU_PACKAGE, then it is used instead of the VCS_HOME environment variable.

Cadence Incisive Enterprise			
	13.20.02 or 14.10.014	4.4 (Linux 32/64 bit)	<install dir>/tools/cdsgcc/gcc/4.4

Note: Use the *cds_tools.sh* executable to find the Incisive installation. Ensure $PATH includes the installation path and *<install dir>/tools/cdsgcc/gcc/4.4/install/bin*. Also, ensure the LD_LIBRARY_PATH includes *<install dir>/tools/cdsgcc/gcc/4.4/install/lib*.

Chapter 1
Mentor VIP Altera Edition

The Mentor VIP AE provides BFMs to simulate the behavior and to facilitate IP verification. The Mentor VIP AE includes the following interface:

- AXI4-Lite BFM with master, slave, and inline monitor interfaces

Advantages of Using BFMs and Monitors

Using the Mentor VIP AE has the following advantages:

- Accelerates the verification process by providing key verification test bench components
- Provides BFM components that implement the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification, which serves as a reference for the protocol
- Provides a full suite of configurable assertion checking in each BFM

Implementation of BFMs

The Mentor VIP AE BFMs, master, slave, and inline monitor components are implemented in SystemVerilog. Also included are wrapper components so that you can use the BFMs in VHDL verification environments with simulators that support mixed-language simulation.

The Mentor VIP AE provides a set of APIs for each BFM that you can use to construct, instantiate, control, and query signals in all BFM components. Your test programs must use only these public access methods and events to communicate with each BFM. To ensure support in current and future releases, your test programs must use the standard set of APIs to interface with the BFMs. Nonstandard APIs and user-generated interfaces cannot be supported in future releases.

The test program drives the stimulus to the DUTs and determines whether the behavior of the DUTs is correct by analyzing the responses. The BFMs translate the test program stimuli (transactions), creating the signaling for the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification. The BFMs also check for protocol compliance by firing an assertion when a protocol error is observed.

What Is a Transaction?

A transaction for Mentor VIP AE represents an instance of information that is transferred between a master and a slave peripheral, and that adheres to the protocol used to transfer the information. For example, a write transaction transfers an address phase, a data a phase, followed by a response phase. A subsequent instance of transferred information requires a new and unique transaction.

Each transaction has a dynamic Transaction Record that exists for the life of the transaction. The life of a transaction record starts when it is created and ends when the transaction completes. The transaction record is automatically discarded when the transaction ends.

When created, a transaction contains *transaction fields* that you set to define two transaction aspects:

- *Protocol fields* are transferred over the protocol signals.
- *Operation fields* determine how the information is transferred and when the transfer is complete.

For example, a write transaction record holds the *protection* information in the *prot* protocol field; the value of this field is transferred over the AWPROT protocol signals during an address phase. A write transaction also has a *transaction_done* operation field that indicates when the transaction is complete; this field is not transferred over the protocol signals. These two types of transaction fields, protocol and operation, establish a dynamic record during the life of the transaction.

In addition to transaction fields, you specify *arguments* to tasks, functions, and procedures that permit you to create, set, and get the dynamic transaction record during the lifetime of a transaction. Each BFM has an API that controls how you access the BFM transaction record. How you access the record also depends on the source code language, whether it is VHDL or SystemVerilog. Methods for accessing transactions based on the language you use are explained in detail in the relevant chapters of this user guide.

AXI4-Lite Transactions

A complete read/write transaction transfers information between a master and a slave peripheral. Transaction fields described in "What Is a Transaction?" on page 22 determine what is transferred and how information is transferred. During the lifetime of a transaction, the roles of the master and slave ensure that a transaction completes successfully and that transferred information adheres to the protocol specification. Information flows in both directions during a transaction with the master initiating the transaction, and the slave reporting back to the master that the transaction has completed.

An AXI4-Lite protocol uses five channels (three write channels and two read channels) to transfer protocol information. Each of these channels has a pair of handshake signals, *VALID and *READY, that indicates valid information on a channel and the acceptance of the information from the channel.

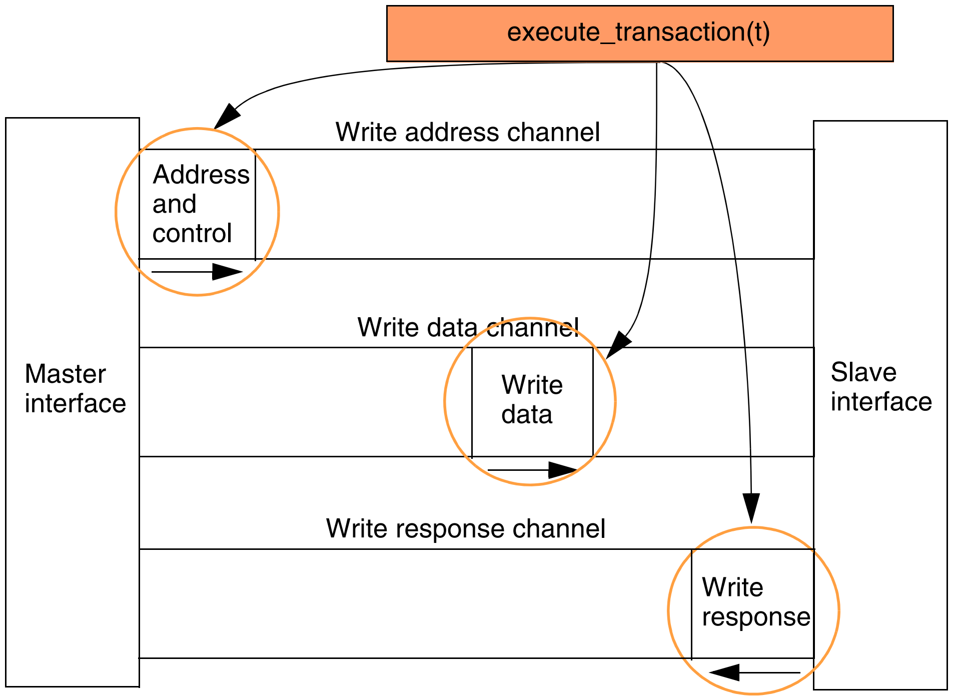
AXI4-Lite Write Transaction Master and Slave Roles

Note

The following description of a write transaction references SystemVerilog BFM API tasks. There are equivalent VHDL BFM API procedures that perform the same functionality.

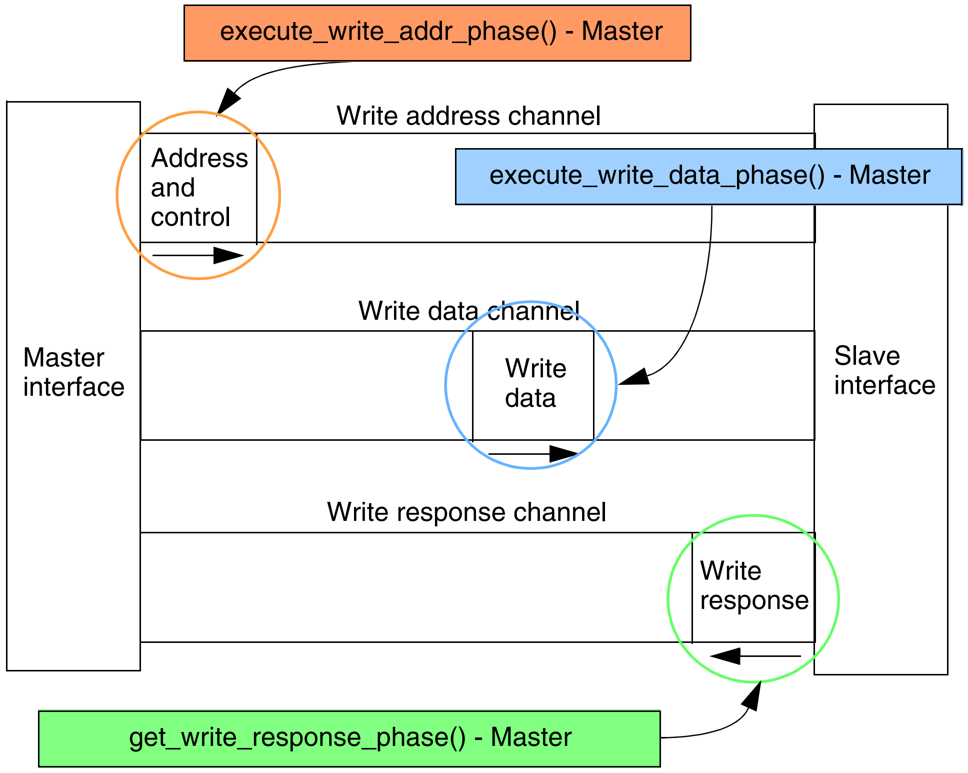
For a write transaction, the master calls the *create_write_transaction()* task to define the information to be transferred and then calls the *execute_transaction()* task to initiate the transfer of information as Figure 1-1 illustrates.

Figure 1-1. Execute Write Transaction



The *execute_transaction()* task results in the master calling the *execute_write_addr_phase()* task followed by the *execute_write_data_phase()* task as illustrated in Figure 1-2.

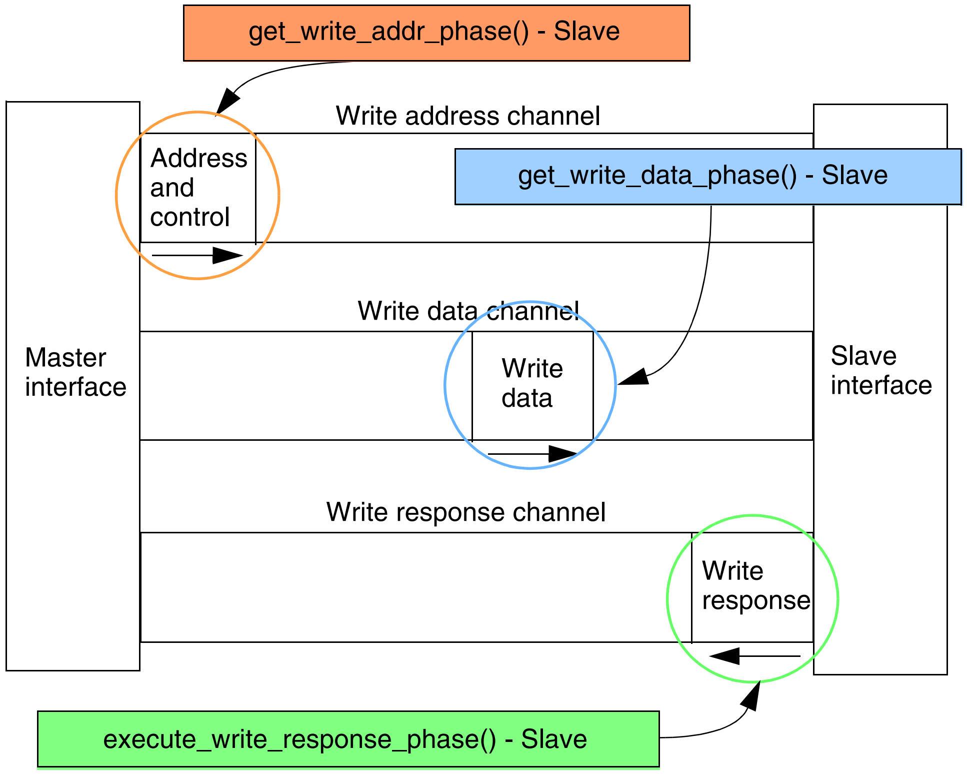
Figure 1-2. Master Write Transaction Phases



The master then calls the *get_write_response_phase()* task to receive the response from the slave and to complete its role in the write transaction.

The slave also creates a transaction by calling the *create_slave_transaction()* task to accept the transfer of information from the master. The address phase and data phase are received by the slave calling the *get_write_addr_phase()* task, followed by the *get_write_data_phase()* task as illustrated in Figure 1-3.

Figure 1-3. Slave Write Transaction Phases



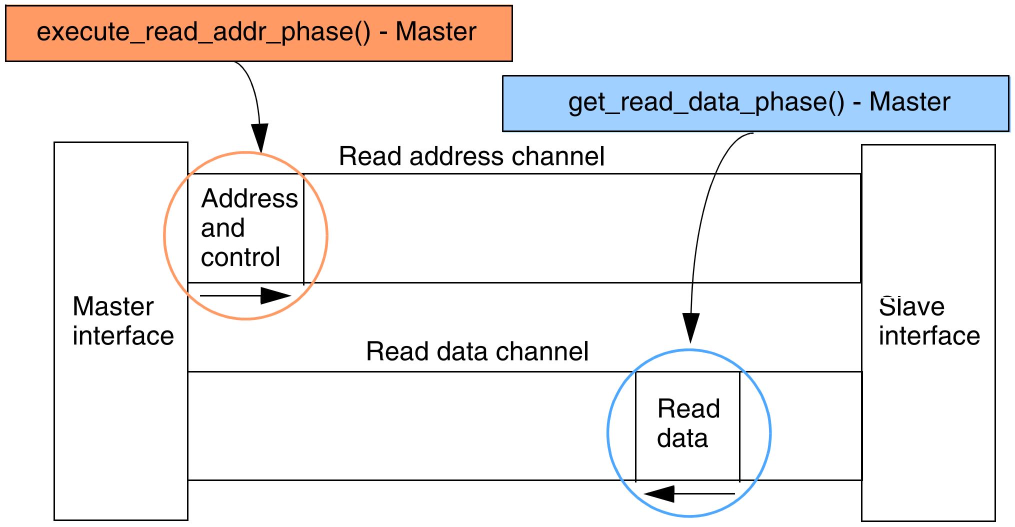
The slave then executes a write response phase by calling the *execute_write_response_phase()* task and completes its role in the write transaction.

AXI Read Transaction Master and Slave Roles

Note
The following description of a read transaction references the SystemVerilog BFM API tasks. There are equivalent VHDL BFM API procedures that perform the same functionality.

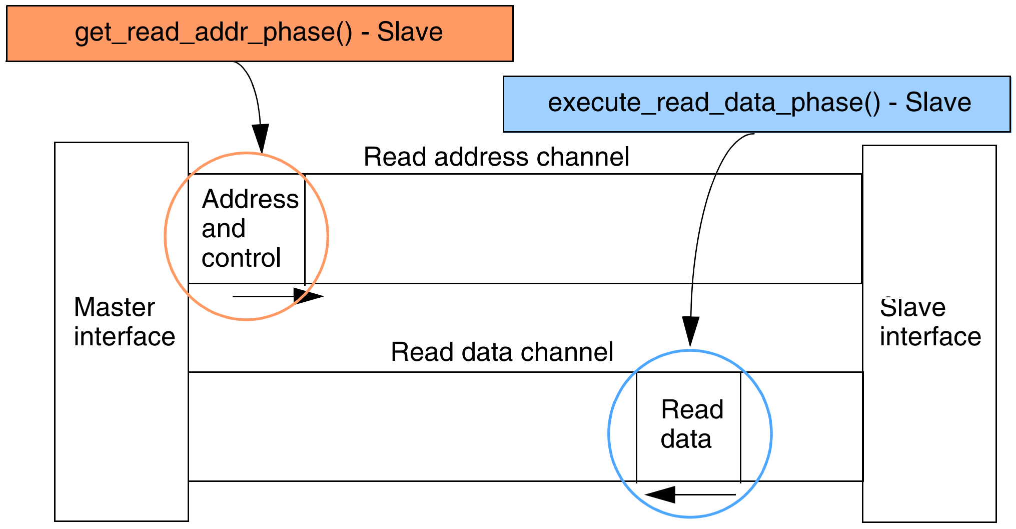
A read transaction is similar to a write transaction. The master initiates the read by calling the *create_read_transaction()* and *execute_transaction()* tasks. The *execute_transaction()* calls the the *execute_read_addr_phase()* task followed by the *get_read_data_phase()* task as illustrated in Figure 1-4.

Figure 1-4. Master Read Transaction Phases



The slave creates a read transaction by calling the *create_slave_transaction()* task to accept the transfer of read information from the master. The slave accepts the address phase by calling the *get_read_addr_phase()* task, and then executes the data burst phase by calling the *execute_read_data_phase()* task as illustrated in Figure 1-5.

Figure 1-5. Slave Read Transaction Phases

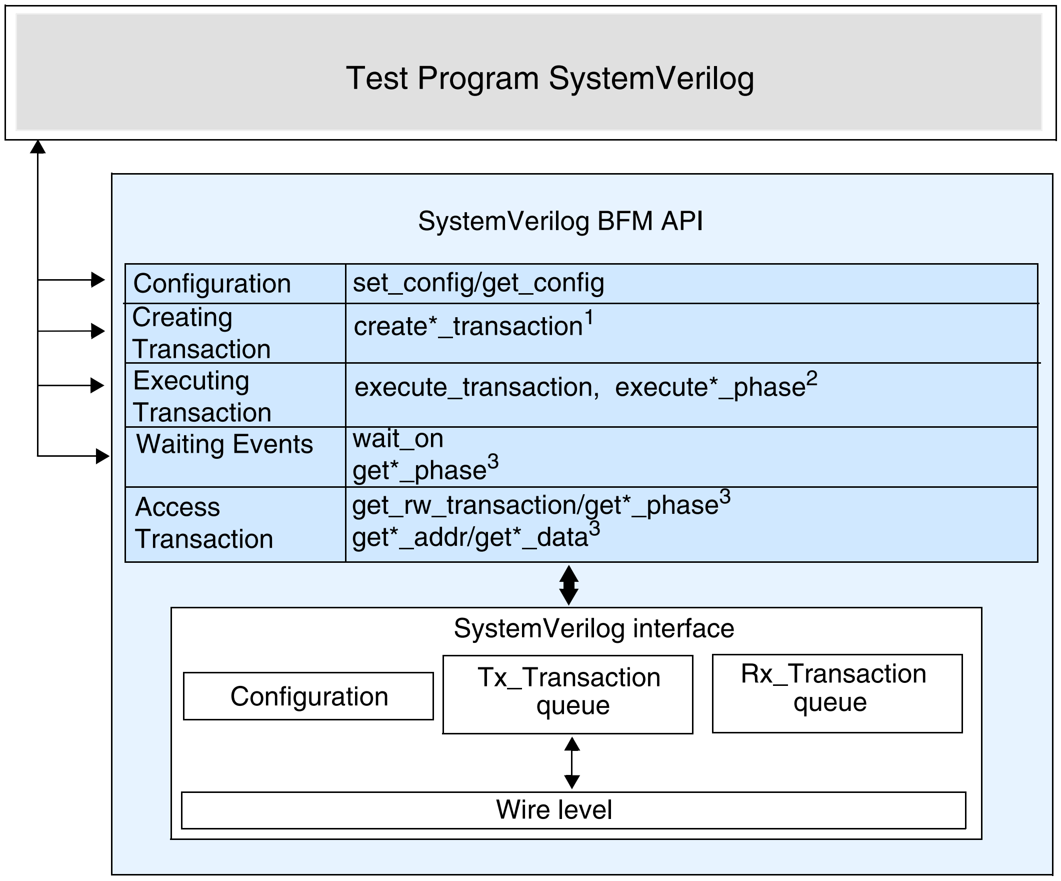


Chapter 2
SystemVerilog API Overview

This chapter provides the functional description of the SystemVerilog (SV) Application Programming Interface (API) for all BFM (master, slave, and monitor) components. For each BFM, you can configure the protocol transaction fields that are executed on the protocol signals, as well as control the operational transaction fields that permit delays to be introduced between the handshake signals for each of the five address, data, and response channels.

In addition, each BFM API has tasks that wait for certain events to occur on the system clock and reset signals, and tasks to get and set information about a particular transaction.

Figure 2-1. SystemVerilog BFM Internal Structure



Notes: 1. Refer to create*_transaction()

2. Refer to execute_transaction(), execute*_phase()

3. Refer to get*()

Configuration

Configuration sets timeout delays, error reporting, and other attributes of the BFM. Each BFM has a *set_config()* function that sets the configuration of the BFM. Refer to the individual BFM APIs for details.

Each BFM also has a *get_config()* function that returns the configuration of the BFM. Refer to the individual BFM APIs for details.

set_config()

The following test program code sets the burst timeout factor for a transaction in the master BFM.

```
// Setting the burst timeoutfactor to 1000
master_bfm.set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_BURST_TIMEOUT_FACTOR, 1000);
```

get_config()

The following test program code gets the protocol signal hold time in the master BFM.

```
 // Getting hold time value
hold_time = master_bfm.get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME);
```

Creating Transactions

To transfer information between a master BFM and a slave DUT over the protocol signals, you must create a transaction in the master test program. Similarly, to transfer information between a master DUT and a slave BFM, you must create a transaction in the slave test program. To monitor the transfer of information using a monitor BFM, you must create a transaction in the monitor test program.

When you create a transaction, a Transaction Record is created and exists for the life of the transaction. This transaction record can be accessed by the BFM test programs during the life of the transaction as it transfers information between the master and slave.

Transaction Record

The transaction record contains two types of transaction fields, *protocol* and *operational,* that either transfer information over the protocol signals or define how and when a transfer occurs.

Protocol fields contain transaction information that is transferred over protocol signals. For example, the *prot* field is transferred over the AWPROT protocol signals during a write transaction.

Operational fields define how and when the transaction is transferred. Their content is not transferred over protocol signals. For example, the *operation_mode* field controls the blocking/nonblocking operation of a transaction, but this information is not transferred over the protocol signals.

AXI4-Lite Transaction Definition

The transaction record exists as a SystemVerilog class definition in each BFM. Example 2-1 shows the definition of the *axi4_transaction* class members that form the transaction record.

Example 2-1. AXI4 Transaction Definition

```
// Global Transaction Class
class axi4_transaction;
    // Protocol
    axi4_rw_e read_or_write;
    bit [((`MAX_AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH) - 1):0]  addr;
    axi4_prot_e prot;
    bit [3:0] region; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    axi4_size_e size; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    axi4_burst_e burst; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    axi4_lock_e lock; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    axi4_cache_e cache; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    bit [3:0] qos; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    bit [((`MAX_AXI4_ID_WIDTH) - 1):0] id; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    bit [7:0] burst_length; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    bit [((`MAX_AXI4_USER_WIDTH) - 1):0]  addr_user; // Not supported in
AXI4-Lite
    bit [(((`MAX_AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH > `MAX_AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH) ?
`MAX_AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH : `MAX_AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH)) - 1):0] data_words [];
    bit [(((`MAX_AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH / 8)) - 1):0] write_strobes [];
    axi4_response_e resp[];
    int address_valid_delay;
    int data_valid_delay[];
    int write_response_valid_delay;
    int address_ready_delay;
    int data_ready_delay[];
    int write_response_ready_delay;

    // Housekeeping
    bit gen_write_strobes = 1'b1;
    axi4_operation_mode_e  operation_mode  = AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING;
    axi4_write_data_mode_e write_data_mode = AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS;
    bit data_beat_done[]; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    bit transaction_done;

...

endclass
```

Note

This *axi4_transaction* class code is shown for information only. Access to each transaction record during its life is performed by various *set*()* and *get*()* tasks described later in this chapter.

The contents of the transaction record are defined in Table 2-1.

Table 2-1. Transaction Fields

Transaction Field	Description
Protocol Transaction Fields	
addr	A bit vector (the length is equal to the ARADDR/AWADDR signal bus width) containing the starting *address* of the first transfer (beat) of a transaction. The *addr* value is transferred over the ARADDR or AWADDR signals for a read or write transaction, respectively.
prot	An enumeration containing the *protection* type of a transaction. The types of *protection* are: AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA (default) AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST The *prot* value is transferred over the ARPROT or AWPROT signals for a read or write transaction, respectively.
data_words	A bit vector (of length equal to the greater of the RDATA/WDATA signal bus widths) to hold the *data words* of the payload. A *data_words* is transferred over the RDATA or WDATA signals per beat of the read or write data channel, respectively.
write_strobes	A bit vector (of length equal to the WDATA signal bus width divided by 8) to hold the write strobes. A *write_strobes* is transferred over the WSTRB signals per beat of the write data channel.

resp	An enumeration to hold the response of a transaction. The types of *response* are:
	
	AXI4_OKAY;
	AXI4_SLVERR;
	AXI4_DECERR;
	
	A *resp* is transferred over the RRESP signals per beat of the read data channel, and over the BRESP signals for a write transaction, respectively.

Table 2-1. Transaction Fields (cont.)

Transaction Field	Description
Operational Transaction Fields	
read_or_write	An enumeration to hold the *read or write* control flag. The types of *read_or_write* are: AXI4_TRANS_READ AXI4_TRANS_WRITE
address_valid_delay	An integer to hold the delay value of the address channel AWVALID and ARVALID signals (measured in ACLK cycles) for a read or write transaction, respectively.
data_valid_delay	An integer to hold the delay value of the data channel WVALID and RVALID signals (measured in ACLK cycles) for a read or write transaction, respectively.
write_response_valid_delay	An integer to hold the delay value of the write response channel BVALID signal (measured in ACLK cycles) for a write transaction.
address_ready_delay	An integer to hold the delay value of the address channel AWREADY and ARREADY signals (measured in ACLK cycles) for a read or write transaction, respectively.
data_ready_delay	An integer to hold the delay value of the data channel WREADY and RREADY signals (measured in ACLK cycles) for a read or write transaction, respectively.
write_response_ready_delay	An integer to hold the delay value of the write response channel BREADY signal (measured in ACLK cycles) for a write transaction.
gen_write_strobes	Automatically correct write strobes flag. Refer to Automatic Generation of Byte Lane Strobes for details.
operation_mode	An enumeration to hold the *operation mode* of the transaction. The two types of *operation_mode* are: AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING

Table 2-1. Transaction Fields (cont.)

Transaction Field	Description
write_data_mode	An enumeration to hold the *write data mode* control flag. The types of *write_data_mode* are: AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation. AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS (default) The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*.
transaction_done	A bit to hold the *done* flag for a transaction when it has completed.

The master BFM API allows you to create a master transaction by providing only the address argument for a read or write transaction. All other protocol transaction fields automatically default to legal protocol values to create a complete master transaction record. Refer to the *create_read_transaction()* and *create_write_transaction()* functions for default protocol read and write transaction field values.

The slave BFM API allows you to create a slave transaction without providing any arguments. All protocol transaction fields automatically default to legal protocol values to create a complete slave transaction record. Refer to the *create_slave_transaction()* function for default protocol transaction field values.

The monitor BFM API allows you to create a monitor transaction without providing any arguments. All protocol transaction fields automatically default to legal protocol values to create a complete slave transaction record. Refer to the *create_monitor_transaction()* function for default protocol transaction field values.

Note

If you change the default value of a protocol transaction field, this value is valid for all future transactions until you set a new value.

create*_transaction()

There are two master BFM API functions available to create transactions, *create_read_transaction()* and *create_write_transaction()*, a *create_slave_transaction()* for the slave BFM API, and a *create_monitor_transaction()* for the monitor BFM API.

For example, the following master BFM test program creates a simple write transaction with a start address of 1, and a single data phase with a data value of 2, the master BFM test program would contain the following code:

```
// Define a variable trans of type axi4_transaction
axi4_transaction write_trans;

// Create master write transaction
write_trans = bfm.create_write_transaction(1);
write_trans.data_words    = 2;
```

For example, to create a simple slave transaction, the slave BFM test program contains the following code:

```
// Define a variable slave_trans of type axi4_transaction
axi4_transaction slave_trans;

// Create slave transaction
slave_trans = bfm.create_slave_transaction();
```

Executing Transactions

Executing a transaction in a master/slave BFM test program initiates the transaction onto the protocol signals. Each master/slave BFM API has execution tasks that push transactions into the BFM internal transaction queues. Figure 2-1 on page 27 illustrates the internal BFM structure.

execute_transaction(), execute*_phase()

If the DUT is a slave, then the *execute_transaction()* task is called in the master BFM test program. If the DUT is a master, then the execute*_phase() taskis called in the slave BFM test program.

For example, to execute a master write transaction the master BFM test program contains the following code:

```
// By default the execution of a transaction will block
bfm.execute_transaction(write_trans);
```

For example, to execute a slave write response phase, the slave BFM test program contains the following code:

```
// By default the execution of a transaction will block
bfm.execute_write_response_phase(slave_trans);
```

Waiting Events

Each BFM API has tasks that block the test program code execution until an event has occurred.

The *wait_on()* task blocks the test program until an ACLK or ARESETn signal event has occurred before proceeding.

The *get*_transaction(), get*_phase(), get*_cycle()* tasks block the test program code execution until a complete transaction, phase, or cycle has occurred, respectively.

wait_on()

A BFM test program can wait for the positive edge of the ARESETn signal using the following code:

```
// Block test program execution until the positive edge of the clock
bfm.wait_on(AXI4_RESET_POSEDGE);
```

get*_transaction(), get*_phase(), get*_cycle()

A slave BFM test program can use a received write address phase to form the response to the write transaction. The test program gets the write address phase for the transaction by calling the *get_write_addr_phase()* task. This task blocks until it has received the address phase, allowing the test program to call the *execute_write_response_phase()* task for the transaction at a later stage, as shown in the slave BFM test program in Example 2-2.

Example 2-2. Slave Test Program Using get_write_addr_phase()

```
slave_trans = bfm.create_slave_transaction();
bfm.get_write_addr_phase(slave_trans);

...

bfm.execute_write_response_phase(slave_trans);
```

Note
Not all BFM APIs support the full complement of *get*_transaction(), get*_phase(), get*_cycle()* tasks. Refer to the individual master, slave, or monitor BFM API for details.

Access Transaction Record

Each BFM API has tasks that can access a complete or partially complete Transaction Record. The *set*()* and *get*()* tasks are used in a test program to set and get information from the transaction record.

Note

The *set*()* and *get*()* tasks are not explicitly described in each BFM API chapter. The simple rule for the task name is *set_* or *get_* followed by the name of the transaction field accessed. Refer to "Transaction Fields" on page 30 for transaction field name details.

set*()

For example, to set the WSTRB write strobes signal in the Transaction Record of a write transaction, the master test program would use the *set_write_strobes()* task, as shown in the following code:

```
write_trans.set_write_strobes(4'b0010);
```

get*()

For example, a slave BFM test program uses a received write address phase to get the AWPROT signal value from the Transaction Record, as shown in the following slave BFM test program code:

```
// Define a variable prot_value of type axi4_transaction
axi4_prot_e prot_value;

slave_trans = bfm.create_slave_transaction();

// Wait for a write address phase
bfm.get_write_addr_phase(slave_trans);

... …

// Get the AWPROT signal value of the slave transaction
prot_value = bfm.get_prot(slave_trans);
```

Operational Transaction Fields

Operational transaction fields control the way a transaction is executed onto the protocol signals. They also indicate when a data phase (beat) or transaction is complete.

Automatic Generation of Byte Lane Strobes

The master BFM permits unaligned and narrow write transfers by using byte lane strobe (WSTRB*)* signals to indicate which byte lanes contain valid data per data phase (beat).

When you create a write transaction in your master BFM test program, the *write_strobes* variable is available to store the write strobe values for the write data phase (beat) in the transaction. To assist you in creating the correct byte lane strobes, automatic correction of any previously set *write_strobes* is performed by default during execution of the write transaction, or write data phase (beat). You can disable this default behavior by setting the operational transaction field *gen_write_strobes = 0,* which allows any previously set *write_strobes* to pass through uncorrected onto the protocol WSTRB signals. In this mode, with the automatic correction disabled, you are responsible for setting the correct *write_strobes* for the whole transaction.

The automatic correction algorithm performs a bit-wise AND operation on any previously set *write_strobes*. To do the corrections, the correction algorithm uses the equations described in the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification, Section A3.4.1, that define valid write data byte lanes for legal protocol. Therefore, if you require automatic generation of all *write_strobes*, before the write transaction executes, you must set all *write_strobes* to 1, indicating that all bytes lanes initially contain valid write data prior to the execution of the write transaction. Automatic correction then sets the relevant *write_strobes* to 0 to produce legal protocol WSTRB signals.

Operation Mode

By default, each read or write transaction performs a blocking operation which prevents a following transaction from starting until the current active transaction completes.

You can configure this behavior to be nonblocking by setting the *operation_mode* transaction field to the enumerate type value AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING instead of the default AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING.

For example, in a master BFM test program you create a transaction by calling the *create_read_transaction()* or *create_write_transaction()* tasks, which creates a transaction record. Before executing the transaction record, you can change the *operation_mode* as follows:

```
// Create a write transaction to create a transaction record
trans = bfm.create_write_transaction(1);

// Change operation_mode to be nonblocking in the transaction record
trans.operation_mode(AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING);
```

Channel Handshake Delay

Each of the five protocol channels have *VALID and *READY handshake signals that control the rate at which information is transferred between a master and slave. Refer to the Handshake Delay for details of the AXI4-Lite BFM API.

Handshake Delay

The delay between the *VALID and *READY handshake signals for each of the five protocol channels is controlled in a BFM test program using *execute_*_ready()*, *get_*_ready(),* and *get_*_cycle()* tasks. The *execute_*_ready()* tasks place a value onto the *READY signals and the *get_*_ready()* tasks retrieve a value from the *READY signals. The *get_*_cycle()* tasks wait for a *VALID signal to be asserted and are used to insert a delay between the *VALID and *READY signals in the BFM test program.

For example, the master BFM test program code below inserts a specified delay between the read channel RVALID and RREADY handshake signals using the *execute_read_data_ready()* and *get_read_data_cycle()* tasks.

```
// Set the RREADY signal to ‘0’ so that it is nonblocking
fork
   bfm.execute_read_data_ready(1'b0);
join_none

// Wait until the RVALID signal is asserted and then wait_on the specified
// number of ACLK cycles
bfm.get_read_data_cycle;
repeat(5) bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);

// Set the RREADY signal to ‘1’ so that it blocks for an ACLK cycle
bfm.execute_read_data_ready(1'b1);
```

VALID Signal Delay Transaction Fields

The transaction record contains a **_valid_delay* transaction field for each of the five protocol channels to configure the delay value prior to the assertion of the *VALID signal for the channel. The master BFM holds the delay configuration for the *VALID signals that it asserts, and the slave BFM holds the delay configuration for the *VALID signals that it asserts. Table 2-2 specifies which **_valid_delay* fields are configured by the master and slave BFMs.

Table 2-2. Master and Slave *_valid_delay Configuration Fields

Signal	Operational Transaction Field	Configuration BFM
AWVALID	address_valid_delay	Master
WVALID	data_valid_delay	Master
BVALID	write_response_valid_delay	Slave

Table 2-2. Master and Slave *_valid_delay Configuration Fields (cont.)

Signal	Operational Transaction Field	Configuration BFM
ARVALID	address_valid_delay	Master
RVALID	data_valid_delay	Slave

*READY Handshake Signal Delay Transaction Fields

The transaction record contains a **_ready_delay* transaction field for each of the five protocol channels to store the delay value that occurred between the assertion of the *VALID and *READY handshake signals for the channel. Table 2-3 specifies the **_ready_delay* field corresponding to the *READY signal delay.

Table 2-3. Master and Slave *_ready_delay Transaction Fields

Signal	Operational Transaction Field
AWREADY	address_ready_delay
WREADY	data_ready_delay
BREADY	write_response_ready_delay
ARREADY	address_ready_delay
RREADY	data_ready_delay

Transaction Done

The *transaction_done* field in each transaction indicates when the transaction is complete.

In a master BFM test program, you call the *get_read_data_phase()* task to investigate whether a read transaction is complete, and the *get_write_response_phase()* to investigate whether a write transaction is complete.

Chapter 3
SystemVerilog Master BFM

This chapter provides information about the SystemVerilog master BFM. Each BFM has an API that contains tasks and functions to configure the BFM and to access the dynamic Transaction Record during the lifetime of the transaction.

Master BFM Protocol Support

The AXI4-Lite master BFM supports the AMBA AXI4-Lite protocol with restrictions described in "Protocol Restrictions" on page 17.

Master Timing and Events

For detailed timing diagrams of the protocol bus activity, refer to the relevant AMBA AXI Protocol Specification chapter, which you can use to reference details of the following master BFM API timing and events.

The AMBA AXI Protocol Specification does not define any timescale or clock period with signal events sampled and driven at rising ACLK edges. Therefore, the master BFM does not contain any timescale, timeunit, or timeprecision declarations with the signal setup and hold times specified in units of simulator time-steps.

The simulator time-step resolves to the smallest of all the time-precision declarations in the test bench and design IP as a result of these directives, declarations, options, or initialization files:

- ` timescale directives in design elements
- Timeprecision declarations in design elements
- Compiler command-line options
- Simulation command-line options
- Local or site-wide simulator initialization files

If there is no timescale directive, the default time unit and time precision are tool specific. The recommended practice is to use timeunit and timeprecision declarations. For details, refer to Section 3.14, "System Time Units and Precision," of the *IEEE Standard for SystemVerilog—Unified Hardware Design, Specification, and Verification Language,* IEEE Std 1800^{TM}-2012 , February 21, 2013. This user guide refers to this document as the *IEEE Standard for SystemVerilog.*

Master BFM Configuration

A master BFM supports the full range of signals defined for the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification. It has parameters that configure the widths of the address and data signals, and transaction fields to specify timeout factors, setup and hold times, and so on.

You can change the address and data signal widths from their default settings by assigning them new values, usually in the top-level module of the test bench. These new values are then passed to the master BFM using a parameter port list of the master BFM module. For example, the code extract below shows the master BFM with the address and data signal widths defined in *module top()* and passed to the *master_test_program* parameter port list:

```
module top ();

   parameter AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH = 24;
   parameter AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH = 16;
   parameter AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH = 16;


   master_test_program #(AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH, AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH,
AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH) bfm_master(....);
```

Table 3-1 lists parameter names for the address, data signals, etc, and their default values.

Table 3-1. Master BFM Signal Width Parameters

Signal Width Parameter	Description
AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH	Address signal width in bits. This applies to the ARADDR and AWADDR signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 32.
AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH	Read data signal width in bits. This applies to the RDATA signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 64.
AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH	Write data signal width in bits. This applies to the WDATA signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 64.
index	Ignored for the SystemVerilog master BFM.
READ_ISSUING_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding read transactions that can be issued from the master BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See “Running the Qsys Tool” on page 362. for details. Default: 16.

Table 3-1. Master BFM Signal Width Parameters (cont.)

Signal Width Parameter	Description
WRITE_ISSUING_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding write transactions that can be issued from the master BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.
COMBINED_ISSUING_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding combined read and write transactions that can be issued from the master BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.

A master BFM has configuration fields that you can set with the *set_config()* function to configure timeout factors, and setup and hold times, and so on. You can also get the value of a configuration field using the *get_config()* function. Table 3-2 describes the full list of configuration fields.

Table 3-2. Master BFM Configuration

Configuration Field	Description
Timing Variables	
AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME	The setup-time prior to the active edge of ACLK, in units of simulator time-steps for all signals.1 Default: 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME	The hold-time after the active edge of ACLK, in units of simulator time-steps for all signals.1 Default: 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_ FACTOR	The maximum timeout duration for a read/write transaction in clock cycles. Default: 100000.
AXI4_CONFIG_BURST_TIMEOUT_FACTOR	The maximum delay between the individual phases of a read/write transaction in clock cycles. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of AWVALID to the assertion of AWREADY in clock periods. Default: 1000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of ARVALID to the assertion of ARREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.

Table 3-2. Master BFM Configuration (cont.)

Configuration Field	Description
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ASSERTION_TO_RREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of RVALID to the assertion of RREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ASSERTION_TO_BREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of BVALID to the assertion of BREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ASSERTION_TO_WREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of WVALID to the assertion of WREADY in clock periods. Default 10000.
Master Attributes	
AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4	Configures the AXI4 master BFM to be AXI4-Lite compatible. 0 = disabled (default) 1 = enabled
Slave Attributes	
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR	Configures the start address map for the slave.
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR	Configures the end address map for the slave.
Error Detection	
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS	Global enable/disable of all assertion checks in the BFM. 0 = disabled 1 = enabled (default)
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION	Individual enable/disable of assertion check in the BFM. 0 = disabled 1 = enabled (default)

1. Refer to Master Timing and Events for details of simulator time-steps.

Master Assertions

Each master BFM performs protocol error checking using the built-in assertions.

Note
The built-in BFM assertions are independent of programming language and simulator.

Assertion Configuration

By default, all built-in assertions are enabled in the master AXI4-Lite BFM. To globally disable them in the master BFM, use the *set_config()* command as the following example illustrates:

```
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS,0)
```

Alternatively, you can disable individual built-in assertions by using a sequence of *get_config()* and *set_config()* commands on the respective assertion. For example, to disable assertion checking for the AWADDR signal changing between the AWVALID and AWREADY handshake signals, use the following sequence of commands:

```
// Define a local bit vector to hold the value of the assertion bit vector
bit [255:0] config_assert_bitvector;

// Get the current value of the assertion bit vector
config_assert_bitvector = bfm.get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION);

// Assign the AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY assertion bit to 0
config_assert_bitvector[AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY] = 0;

// Set the new value of the assertion bit vector
bfm.set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION, config_assert_bitvector);
```

Note
Do not confuse the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION bit vector with the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS global enable/disable.

To re-enable the *AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY* assertion, follow the above code sequence and assign the assertion within the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION bit vector to 1.

For a complete listing of AXI4-Lite assertions, refer to "AXI4-Lite Assertions" on page 375.

SystemVerilog Master API

This section describes the SystemVerilog master API.

set_config()

This function sets the configuration of the master BFM.

Prototype

```
function void set_config
(
   input axi4_config_e config_name,
   input axi4_max_bits_t config_val
);
```

Arguments

config_name	**Configuration name:** AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4 AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ASSERTION_TO_RREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ASSERTION_TO_BREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ASSERTION_TO_WREADY AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR See "Master BFM Configuration" on page 40 for descriptions and valid values.

Returns

None

Example

```
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR, 1000);
```

get_config()

This function gets the configuration of the master BFM.

Prototype

```
function void get_config
(
   input axi4_config_e config_name,
);
```

Arguments	config_name	**Configuration name:** AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4 AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ASSERTION_ TO_AWREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ASSERTION_ TO_ARREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ASSERTION_ TO_RREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ASSERTION_ TO_BREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ASSERTION_ TO_WREADY AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR
Returns	config_val	See "Master BFM Configuration" on page 40 for descriptions and valid values.

Example

```
get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR);
```

create_write_transaction()

This nonblocking function creates a write transaction with a start address *addr* argument. All other transaction fields default to legal protocol values, unless previously assigned a value. It returns with the *axi4_transaction* record.

Prototype

```
function automatic axi4_transaction create_write_transaction
(
    input bit [((AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH) - 1):0]  addr);
```

Arguments

addr	Start address

Protocol Transaction Fields

prot	Protection:
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA; (default)
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

data_words	Data words.
write_strobes	Write strobes: Each strobe 0 or 1.

resp	Burst response:
	AXI4_OKAY;
	AXI4_SLVERR;
	AXI4_DECERR;

Operational Transaction Fields

gen_write_strobes	Generate write strobes flag: 0 = user supplied write strobes. 1 = auto-generated write strobes (default).
operation_mode	Operation mode: AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING; AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING; (default)
write_data_mode	Write data mode: AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS; The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation. AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS; (default) The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*.

Operational Transaction Fields	address_valid_delay	Address channel AWVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
	data_valid_delay	Write data channel WVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
	write_response_ ready_delay	Write response channel BREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
	transaction_done	Write transaction *done* flag for this transaction.

Returns The *axi4_transaction* record.

Example

```
// Create a write transaction to start address 16.
trans = bfm.create_write_transaction(16);
trans.set_data_words = ('hACE0ACE1, 0); //Note: array element 0.
```

create_read_transaction()

This nonblocking function creates a read transaction with a start address *addr*. All other transaction fields default to legal AXI4-Lite protocol values, unless previously assigned a value. It returns the *axi4_transaction* record.

Prototype	`function automatic axi4_transaction create_read_transaction (`
	`    input bit [((AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH) - 1):0]  addr`
	`);`	

Arguments	addr	Start address

Protocol Transaction Fields	prot	Protection:
		AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA; (default)
		AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
		AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
		AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
		AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
		AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
		AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
		AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

	data_words	Data words.

	resp	Burst response:
		AXI4_OKAY;
		AXI4_EXOKAY;
		AXI4_SLVERR;
		AXI4_DECERR;

Operational Transaction Fields	operation_mode	Operation mode: AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING; AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING; (default)
	address_valid_delay	Address channel ARVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
	data_ready_delay	Read data channel RREADY delay array measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
	transaction_done	Read transaction *done* flag for this transaction.
Returns	axi4_transaction	The transaction record:

Example

```
// Read data to start address 16.
trans = bfm.create_read_transaction(16);
```

execute_transaction()

This task executes a master transaction previously created by the *create_write_transaction()*, or *create_read_transaction()*, functions. The transaction can be blocking (default) or nonblocking, defined by the transaction record *operation_mode* field.

The results of *execute_transaction()* for write transactions varies based on how write transaction fields are set. If the *gen_write_strobes* transaction field is set, *execute_transaction()* automatically corrects any previously set *write_strobes*. However, if the *gen_write_strobes* field is not set, then any previously assigned *write_strobes* will be passed through onto the WSTRB protocol signals, which can result in a protocol violation if not correctly set. Refer to "Automatic Correction of Byte Lane Strobes" on page 147 for more details.

If a write transaction *write_data_mode* field is set to AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS, *execute_transaction()* calls the *execute_write_addr_phase()* and *execute_write_data_phase()* tasks simultaneously; otherwise, *execute_write_data_phase()* will be called after *execute_write_addr_phase()* so that the write data phase will occur after the write address phase (default). It will then call the *get_write_response_phase()* task to complete the write transaction.

For a read transaction, *execute_transaction()* calls the *execute_read_addr_phase()* task followed by the *get_read_data_phase()* task to complete the read transaction.

Prototype

```
task automatic execute_transaction
(
   axi4_transaction trans
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction read_trans;

// Create a read transaction with start address of 0 and assign
// it to the local read_trans variable.
read_trans = bfm.create_read_transaction(0);

....

// Execute the read_trans transaction.
bfm.execute_transaction(read_trans);
```

execute_write_addr_phase()

This task executes a master write address phase previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* function. This phase can be blocking (default) or nonblocking, as defined by the transaction *operation_mode* field.

It sets the AWVALID protocol signal at the appropriate time defined by the transaction *address_valid_delay* field.

Prototype

```
task automatic execute_write_addr_phase
(
   axi4_transaction trans
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction write_trans;

// Create a write transaction with start address of 0 and assign
// it to the local write_trans variable.
write_trans = bfm.create_write_transaction(0);

....

// Execute the write_trans transaction.
bfm.execute_transaction(write_trans);
```

execute_read_addr_phase()

This task executes a master read address phase previously created by the *create_read_transaction()* function. This phase can be blocking (default) or nonblocking, as defined by the transaction *operation_mode* field.

It sets the ARVALID protocol signal at the appropriate time, defined by the transaction *address_valid_delay* field.

Prototype

```
task automatic execute_read_addr_phase
(
   axi4_transaction trans
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction read_trans;

// Create a read transaction with start address of 0 and assign
// it to the local read_trans variable.
read_trans = bfm.create_read_transaction(0);

....

// Execute the write_trans transaction.
bfm.execute_transaction(read_trans);
```

execute_write_data_phase()

This task executes a write data phase (beat) previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* task. This phase can be blocking (default) or nonblocking, defined by the transaction record *operation_mode* field.

The *execute_write_data_phase()* sets the WVALID protocol signal at the appropriate time defined by the transaction record *data_valid_delay* field.

Prototype

```
task automatic execute_write_data_phase
(
     axi4_transaction trans
     int index = 0, // Optional
     output bit last
     );
```

Arguments

trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
index	Data phase (beat) number. Note: ‘0’ for AXI4-Lite
last	Flag to indicate that this phase is the last beat of data.

Returns None

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4lite_transaction write_trans;

// Create a write transaction with start address of 0 and assign
// it to the local write_trans variable.
write_trans = bfm.create_write_transaction(0);

....

// Execute the write data phase for the write_trans transaction.
bfm.execute_write_data_phase(write_trans, 0, last); //Note array element 0
```

get_read_data_phase()

This blocking task gets a read data phase previously created by the *create_read_transaction()* task.

Note

The *get_read_data_phase()* sets the RREADY protocol signal at the appropriate time defined by the *data_ready_delay* field and sets the *transaction_done* field to 1 to indicate the whole read transaction has completed.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_read_data_phase
(
   axi4_transaction trans
   int index = 0 // Optional
);
```

Arguments

trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
index	(Optional) Data phase (beat) number. Note: ‘0’ for AXI4-Lite

Returns None

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction read_trans;

// Create a read transaction with start address of 0 and assign
// it to the local read_trans variable.
read_trans = bfm.create_read_transaction(0);

....

// Get the read data phase for the read_trans transaction.
bfm.get_read_data_phase(read_trans, 0); //Note: array element 0.
```

get_write_response_phase()

This blocking task gets a write response phase previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* task.

Note

The *get_write_response_phase()* sets the *transaction_done* field to 1 when the transaction completes to indicate the whole transaction is complete.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_write_response_phase
 (
     axi4_transaction trans
 );
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction write_trans;

// Create a write transaction with start address of 0 and assign
// it to the local write_trans variable.
write_trans = bfm.create_write_transaction(0);

....

// Get the write response phase for the write_trans transaction.
bfm.get_write_response_phase(write_trans);
```

get_read_addr_ready()

This blocking task returns the value of the read address channel ARREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_read_addr_ready
(
   output bit ready
);
```

Arguments	ready	The value of the ARREADY signal.
Returns	ready	

Example

```
// Get the ARREADY signal value
bfm.get_read_addr_ready(ready);
```

get_read_data_cycle()

This blocking task waits until the read data channel RVALID signal is asserted.

Prototype	`task automatic get_read_data_cycle();`
Arguments	None
Returns	None

Example

```
// Waits until the read data channel RVALID signal is asserted.
bfm.get_read_data_cycle();
```

get_write_addr_ready()

This blocking task returns the value of the write address channel AWREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_write_addr_ready
(
   output bit ready
);
```

Arguments	ready	The value of the AWREADY signal.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Get the value of the AWREADY signal
bfm.get_write_addr_ready();
```

get_write_data_ready()

This blocking task returns the value of the write data channel WREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_write_data_ready
(
   output bit ready
);
```

Arguments	ready	The value of the WREADY signal.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Get the value of the WREADY signal
bfm.get_write_data_ready();
```

get_write_response_cycle()

This blocking task waits until the write response channel BVALID signal is asserted.

Prototype	`task automatic get_write_response_cycle();`
Arguments	None
Returns	None

Example

```
// Wait until the write response channel BVALID signal is asserted.
bfm.get_write_response_cycle();
```

execute_read_data_ready()

This task executes a read data ready by placing the *ready* argument value onto the RREADY signal. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
task automatic execute_read_data_ready
(
    bit ready
);
```

Arguments	ready	The value to be placed onto the RREADY signal
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Assert and deassert the RREADY signal
forever begin
   bfm.execute_read_data_ready(1'b0);

   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);
   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);

   bfm.execute_read_data_ready(1'b1);

   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);
end
```

execute_write_resp_ready()

This task executes a write response ready by placing the *ready* argument value onto the BREADY signal. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
task automatic execute_write_resp_ready
(
    bit ready
);
```

Arguments	ready	The value to be placed onto the BREADY signal
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Assert and deassert the BREADY signal
forever begin
   bfm.execute_write_resp_ready(1'b0);

   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);
   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);

   bfm.execute_write_resp_ready(1'b1);

   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);
end
```

wait_on()

This blocking task waits for an event(s) on the ACLK or ARESETn signals to occur before proceeding. An optional *count* argument waits for the number of events equal to *count*.

Prototype

```
task automatic wait_on
(
   axi4_wait_e phase,
   input int count = 1 //Optional
);
```

Arguments	phase	Wait for: AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_NEGEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_ANYEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_0_TO_1 AXI4_CLOCK_1_TO_0 AXI4_RESET_POSEDGE AXI4_RESET_NEGEDGE AXI4_RESET_ANYEDGE AXI4_RESET_0_TO_1 AXI4_RESET_1_TO_0
	count	(Optional) Wait for a number of events to occur set by *count*. (default = 1)
Returns	None	

Example

```
bfm.wait_on(AXI4_RESET_POSEDGE);
bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE,10);
```

Chapter 4
SystemVerilog Slave BFM

This chapter describes the SystemVerilog slave BFM. Each BFM has an API that contains tasks and functions to configure the BFM and to access the dynamic Transaction Record during the lifetime of the transaction.

Slave BFM Protocol Support

This section defines protocol support for various AXI BFMs. The AXI4-Lite slave BFM supports the AMBA AXI4-Lite protocol with restrictions described in "Protocol Restrictions" on page 17.

Slave Timing and Events

For detailed timing diagrams of the protocol bus activity, refer to the relevant AMBA AXI Protocol Specification chapter, which you can use to reference details of the following slave BFM API timing and events.

The specification does not define any timescale or clock period with signal events sampled and driven at rising ACLK edges. Therefore, the slave BFM does not contain any timescale, timeunit, or timeprecision declarations with the signal setup and hold times specified in units of simulator time-steps.

The simulator time-step resolves to the smallest of all the time-precision declarations in the test bench and design IP based on using the directives, declarations, options, and initialization files below:

- ` timescale directives in design elements
- Timeprecision declarations in design elements
- Compiler command-line options
- Simulation command-line options
- Local or site-wide simulator initialization files

If there is no timescale directive, the default time unit and time precision are tool specific. Using timeunit and timeprecision declarations are recommended. Refer to the *IEEE Standard for SystemVerilog*, Section 3.14 for details.

Slave BFM Configuration

The slave BFM supports the full range of signals defined for the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification. It has parameters you can use to configure the widths of the address and data signals, and transaction fields to configure timeout factors, and setup and hold times, and so on.

You can change the address and data signal widths from their default settings by assigning them with new values, usually performed in the top-level module of the test bench. These new values are then passed into the slave BFM using a parameter port list of the slave BFM module. For example, the code extract below shows the slave BFM with the address and data signal widths defined in *module top()* and passed in to the *slave_test_program* parameter port list:

```
module top ();

   parameter AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH = 24;
   parameter AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH = 16;
   parameter AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH = 16;


   slave_test_program #(AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH, AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH,
AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH) bfm_slave(....);
```

Table 4-1 lists the parameter names for the address and data signals, and their default values.

Table 4-1. Slave BFM Signal Width Parameters

Signal Width Parameter	Description
AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH	Address signal width in bits. This applies to the ARADDR and AWADDR signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 32
AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH	Read data signal width in bits. This applies to the RDATA signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 64.
AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH	Write data signal width in bits. This applies to the WDATA signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 64.
index	Ignored for the SystemVerilog slave BFM.
READ_ACCEPTANCE_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding read transactions that can be accepted by the slave BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.

Table 4-1. Slave BFM Signal Width Parameters (cont.)

Signal Width Parameter	Description
WRITE_ACCEPTANCE_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding write transactions that can be accepted by the slave BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.
COMBINED_ACCEPTANCE_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding combined read and write transactions that can be accepted by the slave BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.

A slave BFM has configuration fields that you can set with the *set_config()* function to configure timeout factors, setup and hold times, and so on. You can also get the value of a configuration field via the *get_config()* function.

Table 4-2 describes the full list of configuration fields.

Table 4-2. Slave BFM Configuration

Configuration Field	Description
Timing Variables	
AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME	The setup time prior to the active edge of ACLK, in units of simulator time-steps for all signals.[1] Default: 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME	The hold-time after the active edge of ACLK, in units of simulator time-steps for all signals.[1] Default: 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_ TIME_FACTOR	The maximum timeout duration for a read/write transaction in clock cycles. Default: 100000.
AXI4_CONFIG_BURST_TIMEOUT_ FACTOR	The maximum delay between the individual phases of a read/write transaction in clock cycles. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ AWVALID_ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of AWVALID to the assertion of AWREADY in clock periods (default 10000).
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ ARVALID_ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of ARVALID to the assertion of ARREADY in clock periods (default 10000).

Table 4-2. Slave BFM Configuration (cont.)

Configuration Field	Description
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_RREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of RVALID to the assertion of RREADY in clock periods (default 10000).
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_BREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of BVALID to the assertion of BREADY in clock periods (default 10000).
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ WVALID_ASSERTION_TO_WREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of WVALID to the assertion of WREADY in clock periods (default 10000).
Master Attributes	
Slave Attributes	
AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4	Configures the AXI4 slave BFM to be AXI4-Lite compatible. 0 = disabled (default) 1 = enabled
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR	Configures the start address map for the slave.
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR	Configures the end address map for the slave.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_OUTSTANDING_WR	Configures the maximum number of outstanding write requests from the master that can be processed by the slave. The slave back-pressures the master by setting the signal AWREADY=0b0 if this value is exceeded. Default = 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_OUTSTANDING_RD	Configures the maximum number of outstanding read requests from the master that can be processed by the slave. The slave back-pressures the master by setting the signal ARREADY=0b0 if this value is exceeded. Default = 0.

Table 4-2. Slave BFM Configuration (cont.)

Configuration Field	Description
AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_ WR_PHASE	Holds the number of outstanding write phases from the master that can be processed by the slave. Default = 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_ RD_PHASE	Holds the number of outstanding read phases to the master that can be processed by the slave. Default = 0.
Error Detection	
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ ASSERTIONS	Global enable/disable of all assertion checks in the BFM. 0 = disabled 1 = enabled (default)
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION	Individual enable/disable of assertion check in the BFM. 0 = disabled 1 = enabled (default)

1. Refer to Slave Timing and Events for details of simulator time-steps.

Slave Assertions

Each slave BFM performs protocol error checking using the built-in assertions.

Note
The built-in BFM assertions are independent of programming language and simulator.

Assertion Configuration

By default, all built-in assertions are enabled in the slave AXI4-Lite BFM. To globally disable them in the slave BFM, use the *set_config()* command as the following example illustrates:

```
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS,0)
```

Alternatively, you can disable individual built-in assertions by using a sequence of *get_config()* and *set_config()* commands on the respective assertion. For example, to disable assertion checking for the AWADDR signal changing between the AWVALID and AWREADY handshake signals, use the following sequence of commands:

```
// Define a local bit vector to hold the value of the assertion bit vector
bit [255:0] config_assert_bitvector;

// Get the current value of the assertion bit vector
config_assert_bitvector = bfm.get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION);

// Assign the AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY assertion bit to 0
config_assert_bitvector[AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY] = 0;

// Set the new value of the assertion bit vector
bfm.set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION, config_assert_bitvector);
```

Note

Do not confuse the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION bit vector with the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS global enable/disable.

To re-enable the AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY assertion, follow the above code sequence and assign the assertion within the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION bit vector to 1. For a complete listing of AXI4-Lite assertions, refer to "AXI4-Lite Assertions" on page 375.

SystemVerilog Slave API

This section describes the SystemVerilog Slave API.

set_config()

This function sets the configuration of the slave BFM.

Prototype

```
function void set_config
(
   input axi4_config_e config_name,
   input axi4_max_bits_t config_val
);
```

Arguments

config_name	Configuration name: AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4 AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ASSERTION_TO_RREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ASSERTION_TO_BREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ASSERTION_TO_WREADY AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_OUTSTANDING_WR AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_OUTSTANDING_RD AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_WR_PHASE AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_RD_PHASE
config_val	See Slave BFM Configuration for descriptions and valid values.

Returns None

Example

```
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR, 1000);
```

get_config()

This function gets the configuration of the slave BFM.

Prototype	`function void get_config ( input axi4_config_e config_name, );`	
Arguments	config_name	Configuration name: AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4 AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ASSERTION_TO_RREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ASSERTION_TO_BREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ASSERTION_TO_WREADY AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_OUTSTANDING_WR AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_OUTSTANDING_RD AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_WR_PHASE AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_RD_PHASE
Returns	config_val	See Slave BFM Configuration for descriptions and valid values.

Example

```
get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR);
```

create_slave_transaction()

This nonblocking function creates a slave transaction. All transaction fields default to legal protocol values, unless previously assigned a value. It returns with the *axi4_transaction* record.

Prototype	`function automatic axi4_transaction create_write_transaction();`	
Protocol Transaction Fields	addr	Start address

	prot	Protection:
		AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA; (default)
		AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
		AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
		AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
		AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
		AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
		AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
		AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

	data_words	Data words.
	write_strobes	Write strobes: Each strobe 0 or 1.

	resp	Burst response:
		AXI4_OKAY;
		AXI4_SLVERR;
		AXI4_DECERR;

	read_or_write	Read or write transaction flag: AXI4_TRANS_READ; AXI4_TRANS_WRITE
Operational Transaction Fields	gen_write_ strobes	Correction of write strobes for invalid byte lanes: 0 = write_strobes passed through to protocol signals. 1 = write_strobes auto-corrected for invalid byte lanes (default).
	operation_ mode	Operation mode: AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING; AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING; (default)
Operational Transaction Fields	write_data_ mode	Write data mode: AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS; The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation. AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS; (default) The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*.
	address_valid_ delay	Address channel ARVALID/AWVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).

	data_valid_delay	Write data channel WVALID delay array measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0 for all elements).
	write_response_ready_delay	Write response channel BREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
	transaction_done	Write transaction *done* flag for this transaction.
Returns	The *axi4_transaction* record.	

Example

```
    // Create a slave transaction.
    trans = bfm.create_slave_transaction();
```

execute_read_data_phase()

This task executes a read data phase (beat) previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* task. This phase can be blocking (default) or nonblocking, as defined by the transaction record *operation_mode* field.

The *execute_read_data_phase()* task sets the RVALID protocol signal at the appropriate time defined by the transaction record *data_valid_delay* field and sets the *transaction_done* field to 1 to indicate the whole read transaction has completed.

Prototype

```
task automatic execute_read_data_phase
(
   axi4_transaction trans
   int index = 0 // Optional
);
```

Arguments

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
	index	Data phase (beat) number. Note: ‘0’ for AXI4-Lite

Returns None

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction read_trans;

// Create a slave transaction and assign it to the local
// read_trans variable.
read_trans = bfm.create_read_transaction(0);

....

// Execute the read data phase for the read_trans transaction.
bfm.execute_read_data_phase(read_trans, 0); //Note: array element 0
```

execute_write_response_phase()

This task executes a write phase previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* task. This phase can be blocking (default) or nonblocking, as defined by the transaction record *operation_mode* field.

It sets the BVALID protocol signal at the approriate time defined by the transaction record *write_response_valid_delay* field and sets the *transaction_done* field to 1 on completion of the phase to indicate the whole transaction has completed.

Prototype

```
task automatic execute_write_response_phase
(
   _transaction trans
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *_transaction* record.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction write_trans;

// Create a slave transaction and assign it to the local
// write_trans variable.
write_trans = bfm.create_slave_transaction();

....

// Execute the write response phase for the write_trans transaction.
bfm.execute_write_response_phase(write_trans);
```

get_write_addr_phase()

Note
This blocking task gets a write address phase previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* function.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_write_addr_phase
(
   axi4_transaction trans
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction write_trans;

// Create a slave transaction and assign it to the local
// write_trans variable.
write_trans = bfm.create_slave_transaction();

....

// Get the write address phase of the write_trans transaction.
bfm.get_write_addr_phase(write_trans);
```

get_read_addr_phase()

This blocking task gets a read address phase previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* function.

Example

Prototype

```
task automatic get_read_addr_phase
(
   axi4_transaction trans
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
Returns	None	

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction read_trans;

// Create a slave transaction and assign it to the local
// read_trans variable.
read_trans = bfm.create_slave_transaction();

....

// Get the read address phase of the read_trans transaction.
bfm.get_read_addr_phase(read_trans);
```

get_write_data_phase()

This blocking task gets a write data phase previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* function.

The *get_write_data_phase()* sets the WREADY protocol signal at the appropriate time defined by the *data_ready_delay* field.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_write_data_phase
(
   axi4_transaction trans
   int index = 0, // Optional
   output bit last
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
	index	(Optional) Data phase (beat) number. Note: '0' for AXI4-Lite
Returns	last	Flag to indicate that this data phase is the last in the burst.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction write_trans;

// Create a slave transaction and assign it to the local
// write_trans variable.
write_trans = bfm.create_slave_transaction(0);

....

// Get the write data phase for the write_trans transaction.
bfm.get_write_data_phase(write_trans, 0, last); //Note: array element 0
```

get_read_addr_cycle()

This blocking task waits until the read address channel ARVALID signal is asserted.

Prototype	`task automatic get_read_addr_cycle();`
Arguments	None
Returns	None

Example

```
// Waits until the read address channel ARVALID signal is asserted.
bfm.get_read_addr_cycle();
```

execute_read_addr_ready()

This task executes a read address ready by placing the *ready* argument value onto the ARREADY signal. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
task automatic execute_read_addr_ready
(
   bit ready
);
```

Arguments	ready	The value to be placed onto the ARREADY signal.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Assert and deassert the ARREADY signal
forever begin
   bfm.execute_read_addr_ready(1'b0);

   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);
   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);

   bfm.execute_read_addr_ready(1'b1);

   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);
end
```

get_read_data_ready()

This blocking task returns the read data ready value of the RREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_read_data_ready
(
   output bit ready
);
```

Arguments	ready	The value of the RREADY signal.
Returns	ready	

Example

```
// Get the value of the RREADY signal
bfm.get_read_data_ready();
```

get_write_addr_cycle()

This blocking task waits until the write address channel AWVALID signal is asserted.

Prototype	`task automatic get_write_addr_cycle();`
Arguments	None
Returns	None

Example

```
// Wait for a single write address cycle
bfm.get_write_addr_cycle();
```

execute_write_addr_ready()

This task executes a write address ready by placing the *ready* argument value onto the AWREADY signal. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
task automatic execute_write_addr_ready
(
   bit ready
);
```

Arguments	ready	The value to be placed onto the AWREADY signal
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Assert and deassert the AWREADY signal
forever begin
   bfm.execute_write_addr_ready(1'b0);

   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);
   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);

   bfm.execute_write_addr_ready(1'b1);

   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);
end
```

get_write_data_cycle()

This blocking task waits for a single write data cycle for which the WVALID signal is asserted. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype	`task automatic get_write_data_cycle();`
Arguments	None
Returns	None

Example

```
// Wait for a single write data cycle

bfm.get_write_data_cycle();
```

execute_write_data_ready()

This task executes a write data ready by placing the *ready* argument value onto the WREADY signal. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
task automatic execute_write_data_ready
(
   bit ready
);
```

Arguments	ready	The value to be placed onto the WREADY signal
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Assert and deassert the WREADY signal
forever begin
   bfm.execute_write_data_ready(1'b0);

   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);
   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);

   bfm.execute_write_data_ready(1'b1);

   bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);
end
```

get_write_resp_ready()

This blocking task returns the write response ready value of the BREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_write_resp_ready
(
   output bit ready
);
```

Arguments	ready	The value of the BREADY signal.
Returns	readyt	

Example

```
// Get the value of the BREADY signal
bfm.get_write_resp_ready();
```

wait_on()

This blocking task waits for an event on the ACLK or ARESETn signals to occur before proceeding. An optional *count* argument waits for the number of events equal to *count*.

Prototype

```
task automatic wait_on
(
   axi4_wait_e phase,
   input int count = 1 //Optional
);
```

Arguments

phase	Wait for: AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_NEGEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_ANYEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_0_TO_1 AXI4_CLOCK_1_TO_0 AXI4_RESET_POSEDGE AXI4_RESET_NEGEDGE AXI4_RESET_ANYEDGE AXI4_RESET_0_TO_1 AXI4_RESET_1_TO_0
count	(Optional) Wait for a number of events to occur set by *count*. (default = 1)

Returns

None

Example

```
bfm.wait_on(AXI4_RESET_POSEDGE);
bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE,10);
```

Helper Functions

AMBA AXI protocols typically provide a start address only in a transaction, with the following addresses for each byte of a data beat calculated. Helper functions provide you with a simple interface to set and get address/data values.

get_write_addr_data()

This nonblocking function returns the actual address *addr* and *data* of a particular byte in a write data beat. It also returns the maximum number of bytes (*dynamic_size*) in the write data phase (beat). It is used in a slave test program as a helper function to store a byte of data at a particular address in the slave memory. If the corresponding *index* does not exist, then this function returns *false*; otherwise, it returns *true*.

Prototype

```
function bit get_write_addr_data
(
   input axi4_transaction trans,
   input int index = 0,
   output bit [((AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH) - 1): 0] addr[],
   output bit [7:0] data[]
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
	index	Data words array element number. Note: ‘0’ for AXI4-Lite
Returns	addr	Write address.
	data	Write data byte.
	bit	Flag to indicate existence of *data*; 0 = nonexistent. 1 = exists.

Example

```
bfm.get_write_addr_data(write_trans, 0, addr, data);
```

get_read_addr()

This nonblocking function returns the address *addr* of a particular byte in a read transaction. It is used in a slave test program as a helper function to return the address of a data byte in the slave memory. If the corresponding *index* does not exist, then this function returns *false*; otherwise, it returns *true*.

Prototype

```
function bit get_read_addr
(
   input axi4_transaction trans,
   input int index = 0,
   output bit [((AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH) - 1) : 0] addr[]
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
	index	Array element number. Note: ‘0’ for AXI4-Lite
	addr	Read address array
Returns	bit	Flag to indicate existence of data; 0 = nonexistent. 1 = exists.

Example

```
bfm.get_read_addr(read_trans, 0, addr);
```

set_read_data()

This nonblocking function sets a read data in the *axi4_transaction* record *data_words* field. It is used in a slave test program as a helper function to read from the slave memory given the address *addr,* data beat *index*, and the read *data* arguments.

Prototype

```
function bit set_read_data
(
   input axi4_transaction trans,
   input int index = 0,
   input bit [((AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH) - 1) : 0] addr[],
   input bit [7:0] data[]
);
```

Arguments

trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
index	(Optional) Data byte array element number. Note: ‘0’ for AXI4-Lite
addr	Read address.
data	Read data byte.

Returns None

Example

```
bfm.set_read_data(read_trans, 0, addr, data);
```

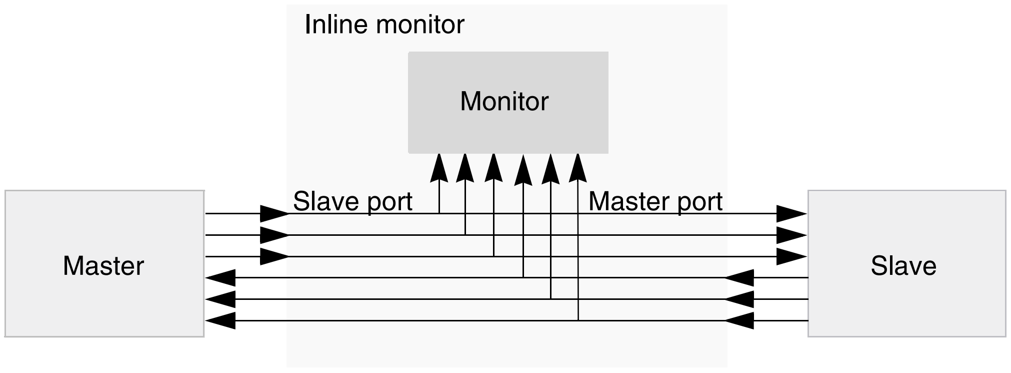
Chapter 5
SystemVerilog Monitor BFM

This chapter describes the SystemVerilog monitor BFM. Each BFM has an API that contains tasks and functions to configure the BFM and to access the dynamic Transaction Record during the lifetime of a transaction.

Inline Monitor Connection

The connection of a monitor BFM to a test environment differs from that of a master and slave BFM. It is wrapped in an inline monitor interface and connected inline between a master and slave, as shown in Figure 5-1. It has separate master and slave ports and monitors protocol traffic between a master and slave. The monitor itself then has access to all the facilities provided by the monitor BFM.

Figure 5-1. Inline Monitor Connection Diagram



Monitor BFM Protocol Support

The AXI4-Lite monitor BFM supports the AMBA AXI4 protocol with restrictions described in "Protocol Restrictions" on page 17.

Monitor Timing and Events

For detailed timing diagrams of the protocol bus activity, refer to the relevant AMBA AXI Protocol Specification chapter, which you can use to reference details of the following monitor BFM API timing and events.

The specification does not define any timescale or clock period with signal events sampled and driven at rising ACLK edges. Therefore, the monitor BFM does not contain any timescale, timeunit, or timeprecision declarations with the signal setup and hold times specified in units of simulator time-steps.

The simulator time-step resolves to the smallest of all the time-precision declarations in the test bench and design IP as a result of these directives, declarations, options, or initialization files:

- ` timescale directives in design elements
- Timeprecision declarations in design elements
- Compiler command-line options
- Simulation command-line options
- Local or site-wide simulator initialization files

If there is no timescale directive, the default time unit and time precision are tool specific. The recommended practice is to use timeunit and timeprecision declarations. Refer to the *IEEE Standard for SystemVerilog*, Section 3.14 for details.

Monitor BFM Configuration

The monitor BFM supports the full range of signals defined for the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification. It has parameters you can use to configure the widths of the address and data signals, and transaction fields to configure timeout factors, setup and hold times, and so on.

You can change the address and data signals widths from their default settings by assigning them new values, usually performed in the top-level module of the test bench. These new values are then passed into the monitor BFM via a parameter port list of the monitor BFM module. For example, the code extract below shows the monitor BFM with the address and data signal widths defined in *module top()* and passed in to the *monitor_test_program* parameter port list:

```
module top ();

   parameter AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH = 24;
   parameter AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH = 16;
   parameter AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH = 16;

   monitor_test_program #(AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH, AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH,
AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH) bfm_monitor(....);
```

Table 5-1 lists the parameter names for the address and data signals, and their default values.

Table 5-1. AXI Monitor BFM Signal Width Parameters

Signal Width Parameter	Description
AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH	Address signal width in bits. This applies to the ARADDR and AWADDR signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 32.

Table 5-1. AXI Monitor BFM Signal Width Parameters (cont.)

AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH	Read data signal width in bits. This applies to the RDATA signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 64.
AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH	Write data signal width in bits. This applies to the WDATA signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 64.
index	Ignored for the SystemVerilog monitor BFM.
READ_ACCEPTANCE_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding read transactions that can be accepted by the monitor BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.
WRITE_ACCEPTANCE_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding write transactions that can be accepted by the monitor BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.
COMBINED_ACCEPTANCE_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding combined read and write transactions that can be accepted by the monitor BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.

A monitor BFM has configuration fields that you can set via the *set_config()* function to configure variables such as timeout factors and setup and hold times. You can also get the value of a configuration field via the *get_config()* function. Table 5-2 describes the full list of configuration fields.

Table 5-2. AXI Monitor BFM Configuration

Configuration Field	Description
Timing Variables	
AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME	The setup time prior to the active edge of ACLK, in units of simulator time-steps for all signals.[1] Default: 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME	The hold time after the active edge of ACLK, in units of simulator time-steps for all signals.[1] Default: 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_ TIME_FACTOR	The maximum timeout duration for a read/write transaction in clock cycles. Default: 100000.

Table 5-2. AXI Monitor BFM Configuration (cont.)

Configuration Field	Description
AXI4_CONFIG_BURST_TIMEOUT_FACTOR	The maximum delay between the individual phases of a read/write transaction in clock cycles. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ AWVALID_ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of AWVALID to the assertion of AWREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of ARVALID to the assertion of ARREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_RREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of RVALID to the assertion of RREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_BREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of BVALID to the assertion of BREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_WREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of WVALID to the assertion of WREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
Slave Attributes	
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR	Configures the start address map for the slave.
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR	Configures the end address map for the slave.
Monitor Attributes	
AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4	Configures the AXI4 monitor BFM to be AXI4-Lite compatible. 0 = disabled (default) 1 = enabled
Error Detection	
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS	Global enable/disable of all assertion checks in the BFM. 0 = disabled 1 = enabled (default)

Table 5-2. AXI Monitor BFM Configuration (cont.)

Configuration Field	Description
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION	Individual enable/disable of assertion check in the BFM. 0 = disabled 1 = enabled (default)

1. Refer to Monitor Timing and Events for details of simulator time-steps.

Monitor Assertions

Each monitor BFM performs protocol error checking using built-in assertions.

Note
The built-in BFM assertions are independent of programming language and simulator.

Assertion Configuration

By default, all built-in assertions are enabled in the monitor AXI4-Lite BFM. To globally disable them in the monitor BFM, use the *set_config()* command as the following example illustrates:

```
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS,0)
```

Alternatively, you can disable individual built-in assertions by using a sequence of *get_config()* and *get_config()* commands on the respective assertion. For example, to disable assertion checking for the AWADDR signal changing between the AWVALID and AWREADY handshake signals, use the following sequence of commands:

```
// Define a local bit vector to hold the value of the assertion bit vector
bit [255:0] config_assert_bitvector;

// Get the current value of the assertion bit vector
config_assert_bitvector = bfm.get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION);

// Assign the AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY assertion bit to 0
config_assert_bitvector[AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY] = 0;

// Set the new value of the assertion bit vector
bfm.set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION, config_assert_bitvector);
```

Note
Do not confuse the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION bit vector with the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS global enable/disable.

To re-enable the AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY assertion, follow the above code sequence and assign the assertion within the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION bit vector to 1.

For a complete listing of AXI4-Lite assertions, refer to "AXI4-Lite Assertions" on page 375.

SystemVerilog Monitor API

This section describes the SystemVerilog Monitor API.

set_config()

This function sets the configuration of the monitor BFM.

Prototype

```
function void set_config
(
   input axi4_config_e config_name,
   input axi4_max_bits_t config_val
);
```

Arguments

config_name	**Configuration name:** AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4 AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ASSERTION_ TO_AWREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ASSERTION_ TO_ARREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ASSERTION_ TO_RREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ASSERTION_ TO_BREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ASSERTION_ TO_WREADY AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR
config_val	See "Monitor BFM Configuration" on page 92 for descriptions and valid values.

Returns

None

Example

```
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR, 1000);
```

get_config()

This function gets the configuration of the monitor BFM.

Prototype	`function void get_config`
	`(`
	`   input axi4_config_e config_name,`
	`);`	

Arguments	config_name	**Configuration name:** AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4 AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ASSERTION_TO_RREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ASSERTION_TO_BREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ASSERTION_TO_WREADY AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR
Returns	config_val	See "Monitor BFM Configuration" on page 92 for descriptions and valid values.

Example

```
get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR);
```

create_monitor_transaction()

This nonblocking function creates a monitor transaction. All transaction fields default to legal protocol values, unless previously assigned a value. It returns with the *axi4_transaction* record.

Prototype `function automatic axi4_transaction create_monitor_transaction();`

Protocol Transaction Fields	addr	Start address

	prot	Protection:
		AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA; (default)
		AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
		AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
		AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
		AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
		AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
		AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
		AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

	data_words	Data words array.
	write_strobes	Write strobes: Each strobe 0 or 1.

	resp	Burst response:
		AXI4_OKAY;
		AXI4_SLVERR;
		AXI4_DECERR;

Operational Transaction Fields	gen_write_ strobes	Generate write strobes flag: 0 = user supplied write strobes. 1 = auto-generated write strobes (default).
	operation_ mode	Operation mode: AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING; AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING; (default)
	write_data_ mode	Write data mode: AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS; The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation. AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS; (default) The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*.
Operational Transaction Fields	address_valid_ delay	Address channel AWVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
	data_valid_ delay	Write data channel WVALID delay array measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0 for all elements).

	write_response _ready_delay	Write response channel BREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
	transaction_ done	Write transaction *done* flag for this transaction.
Returns	The *axi4_transaction* record	

Example

```
// Create a monitor transaction
trans = bfm.create_monitor_transaction();
```

get_rw_transaction()

This blocking task gets a complete read or write transaction previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* function.

It updates the *axi4_transaction* record for the complete transaction.

Prototype	`task automatic get_rw_transaction ( axi4_transaction trans )`	
Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
Returns	None	

```
task automatic get_rw_transaction
(
   axi4_transaction trans
)
```

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction monitor_trans;

// Create a monitor transaction and assign it to the local
// monitor_trans variable.
monitor_trans = bfm.create_monitor_transaction();

....

// Get the complete monitor_trans transaction.
bfm.get_rw_transaction(monitor_trans);
```

get_write_addr_phase()

This blocking task gets a write address phase previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* function.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_write_addr_phase
(
   axi4_transaction trans
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction write_trans;

// Create a monitor transaction and assign it to the local
// write_trans variable.
write_trans = bfm.create_monitor_transaction();

....

// Get the write address phase of the write_trans transaction.
bfm.get_write_addr_phase(write_trans);
```

get_read_addr_phase()

This blocking task gets a read address phase previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* function.

Prototype	`task automatic get_read_addr_phase ( axi4_transaction trans );`	
Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
Returns	None	

```
task automatic get_read_addr_phase
(
   axi4_transaction trans
);
```

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction read_trans;

// Create a monitor transaction and assign it to the local
// read_trans variable.
read_trans = bfm.create_monitor_transaction();

....

// Get the read address phase of the read_trans transaction.
bfm.get_read_addr_phase(read_trans);
```

get_read_data_phase()

This blocking task gets a read data phase previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* function. The *get_read_data_phase()* sets the *transaction_done* field to 1 to indicate the whole read transaction has completed.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_read_data_phase
(
   axi4_transaction trans
   int index = 0 // Optional
);
```

Arguments

trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
index	(Optional) Data phase (beat) number. Note: ‘0’ for AXI4-Lite

Returns None

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction read_trans;

// Create a monitor transaction and assign it to the local
// read_trans variable.
read_trans = bfm.create_monitor_transaction();

....

// Get the read data phase for the read_trans transaction.
bfm.get_read_data_phase(read_trans, 0); //Note: array element 0
```

get_write_data_phase()

This blocking task gets a write data phase previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* function.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_write_data_phase
(
   axi4_transaction trans
   int index = 0, // Optional
   output bit last
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
	index	(Optional) Data phase (beat) number.
Returns	last	Flag to indicate that this data phase is the last in the burst.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction write_trans;

// Create a monitor transaction and assign it to the local
// write_trans variable.
write_trans = bfm.create_monitor_transaction();

....

// Get the write data phase for the write_trans transaction.
bfm.get_write_data_phase(write_trans, 0, last); //Note: array element 0
```

get_write_response_phase

This blocking task gets a write response phase previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* task.

It sets the *transaction_done* field to 1 when the transaction completes to indicate the whole transaction is complete

Prototype

```
task automatic get_write_response_phase
(
   axi4_transaction trans
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Declare a local variable to hold the transaction record.
axi4_transaction write_trans;

// Create a monitor transaction and assign it to the local
// write_trans variable.
write_trans = bfm.create_monitor_transaction();

....

// Get the write response phase of the write_trans transaction.
bfm.get_write_response_phase(write_trans);
```

get_read_addr_ready()

This blocking task returns the read address ready value of the ARREADY signal using the ready argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Example

```
// Get the ARREADY signal value
bfm.get_read_addr_ready();
```

get_read_data_ready()

This blocking task returns the read data ready value of the RREADY signal using the ready argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Example

```
// Get the value of the RREADY signal
bfm.get_read_data_ready();
```

get_write_addr_ready()

This blocking task returns the write address ready value of the AWREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_write_addr_ready
(
   output bit ready
);
```

Arguments	ready	The value of the AWREADY signal.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Get the value of the AWREADY signal
bfm.get_write_addr_ready();
```

get_write_data_ready()

This blocking task returns the write data ready value of the WREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype	`task automatic get_write_data_ready ( output bit ready );`	
Arguments	ready	The value of the WREADY signal.
Returns	None	

```
task automatic get_write_data_ready
(
   output bit ready
);
```

Example

```
// Get the value of the WREADY signalbfm.
get_write_data_ready();
```

get_write_resp_ready()

This blocking task returns the write response ready value of the BREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
task automatic get_write_resp_ready
(
   output bit ready
);
```

Arguments	ready	The value of the BREADY signal.
Returns	None	

Example

```
// Get the value of the BREADY signal
bfm.get_write_resp_ready();
```

wait_on()

This blocking task waits for an event(s) on the ACLK or ARESETn signals to occur before proceeding. An optional *count* argument waits for the number of events equal to *count*

Prototype

```
task automatic wait_on
(
   axi4_wait_e phase,
   input int count = 1 //Optional
);
```

Arguments

phase	Wait for: AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_NEGEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_ANYEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_0_TO_1 AXI4_CLOCK_1_TO_0 AXI4_RESET_POSEDGE AXI4_RESET_NEGEDGE AXI4_RESET_ANYEDGE AXI4_RESET_0_TO_1 AXI4_RESET_1_TO_0
count	(Optional) Wait for a number of events to occur set by *count*. (default = 1)

Returns

None

Example

```
bfm.wait_on(AXI4_RESET_POSEDGE);
bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE,10);
```

Helper Functions

AMBA AXI protocols typically provide a start address only in a transaction, with the following addresses for each byte of a data beat calculated using the size, length, and type transaction fields. Helper functions provide you with a simple interface to set and get address/data values.

get_write_addr_data()

This nonblocking function returns the actual address *addr* and *data* of a particular byte in a write data beat. It is used in a monitor test program as a helper function to store a byte of data at a particular address in the monitor memory. If the corresponding *index* does not exist, then this function returns *false*; otherwise, it returns *true*.

Prototype

```
function bit get_write_addr_data
(
   input axi4_transaction trans,
   input int index = 0,
   output bit [((AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH) - 1) : 0] addr[],
   output bit [7:0] data[]
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
	index	Array element number. Note: ‘0’ for AXI4-Lite
	addr	Write address array
	data	Write data array
Returns	bit	Flag to indicate existence of *index* array element; 0 = array element non-existent. 1 = array element exists.

Example

```
bfm.get_write_addr_data(write_trans, 0, addr, data);
```

get_read_addr()

This nonblocking function returns the actual address *addr* of a particular index in a read transaction. It is used in a monitor test program as a helper function to return the address of a byte of data in the monitor memory. If the corresponding *index* does not exist, then this function returns *false*; otherwise, it returns *true*.

Prototype

```
function bit get_read_addr
(
   input axi4_transaction trans,
   input int index = 0,
   output bit [((AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH) - 1) : 0]
   addr[]
);
```

Arguments	trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
	index	Array element number. Note: ‘0’ for AXI4-Lite
	addr	Read address array
Returns	bit	Flag to indicate existence of *index* array element; 0 = array element non-existent. 1 = array element exists.

Example

```
bfm.get_read_addr(read_trans, 0, addr);
```

set_read_data()

This nonblocking function sets the read data in the *axi4_transaction* record *data_words* field. It is used in a monitor test program as a helper function to read from the monitor memory given the address *addr,* data beat *index*, and the read *data* arguments.

Prototype

```
function bit set_read_addr_data
(
   input axi4_transaction trans,
   input int index = 0,
   input bit [((AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH) - 1) : 0] addr[],
   input bit [7:0] data[]
);
```

Arguments

trans	The *axi4_transaction* record.
index	(Optional) Array element number. Note: ‘0’ for AXI4-Lite
addr	Read address array
data	Read data array

Returns None

Example

```
bfm.set_read_data(read_trans, 0, addr, data);
```

Chapter 6 SystemVerilog Tutorials

This chapter discusses how to use the Mentor Verification IP Altera Edition master and slave BFMs to verify slave and master DUT components.

In the Verifying a Slave DUT tutorial, the slave is an on-chip RAM model that is verified using a master BFM and test program. In the Verifying a Master DUT tutorial, the master issues simple write and read transactions that are verified using a slave BFM and test program.

Following this top-level discussion of how you verify a master and a slave component using the Mentor Verification IP Altera Edition is a brief example of how to run Qsys, the powerful system integration tool in Quartus® II software. This procedure shows you how to use Qsys to create a top-level DUT environment. For more details on this example, refer to "Getting Started with Qsys and the BFMs" on page 359.

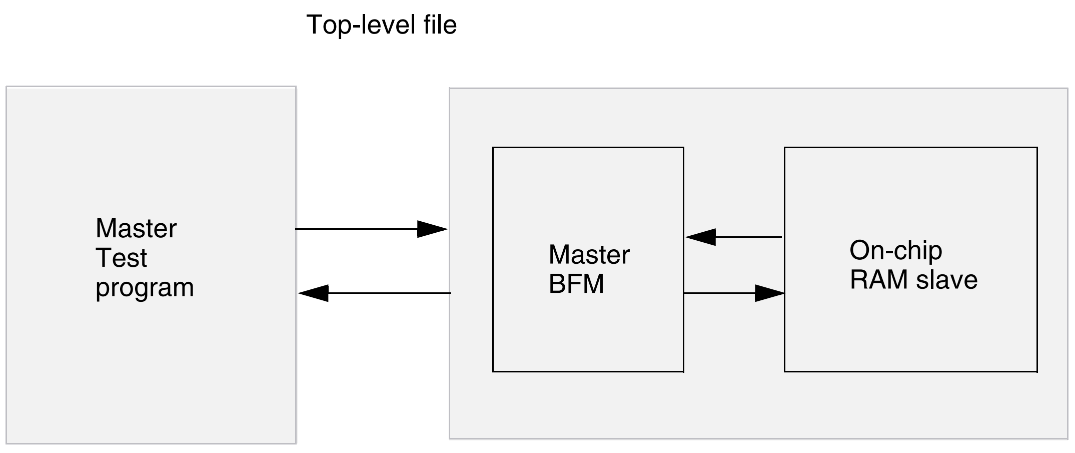
Note

Parameters to configure any optional signals, master BFM transaction issuing and slave BFM acceptance capability, are set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362 for details of the Qsys Parameter Editor.

Verifying a Slave DUT

A slave DUT component is connected to a master BFM at the signal-level. A master test program, written at the transaction-level, generates stimulus using the master BFM to verify the slave DUT. Figure 6-1 illustrates a typical top-level test bench environment.

Figure 6-1. Slave DUT Top-Level Test Bench Environment



In this example, the master test program also compares the written data with that read back from the slave DUT, reporting the result of the comparison.

A top-level file instantiates and connects all the components required to test and monitor the DUT, and controls the system clock (ACLK) and reset (ARESETn) signals.

BFM Master Test Program

A master test program using the master BFM API is capable of creating a wide range of stimulus scenarios to verify a slave DUT. However, this tutorial restricts the master BFM stimulus to write transactions followed by read transactions to the same address, and then compares the read data with the previously written data.

Note

For a complete code example of this master test program, refer to the installed Mentor Verification IP Altera Edition kit in the following directory:
<install_dir>\mentor_vip_ae\axi4lite\qsys-examples\ex1_back_to_back_sv\master_test_program.sv

The master test program contains the following elements:

- A Configuration and Initialization that creates and executes read and write transactions.
- Tasks *handle_write_resp_ready()* and *handle_read_data_ready()* to handle the delay of the write response channel BREADY signal and the read data channel RREADY signals, respectively.
- Variables *m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay* and *m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay* to set the delay of the BREADY and RREADY signals
- A *master_ready_delay_mode* variable to configure the behavior of the handshake signals *VALID to *READY delay.

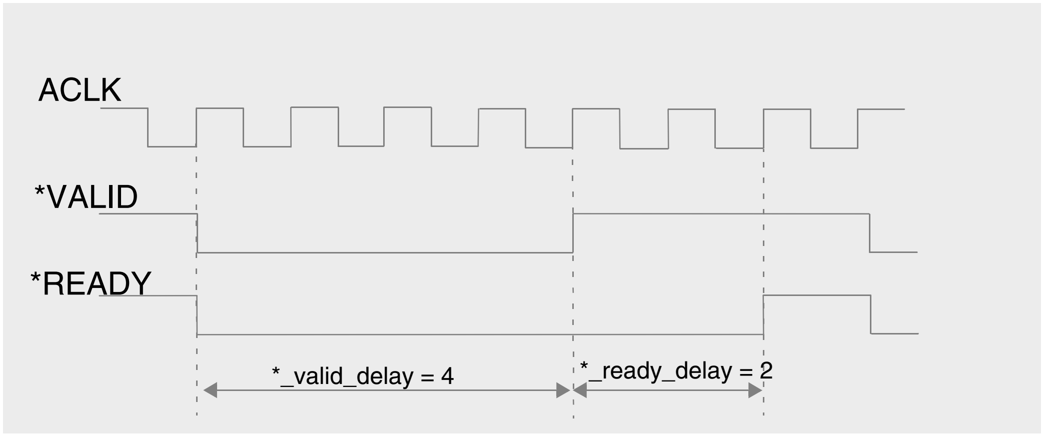
The following sections describe the main tasks and variables.

master_ready_delay_mode

The *master_ready_delay_mode* variable holds the configuration that defines the starting point of any delay applied to the RREADY and BREADY signals. It can be configured to the enumerated type values of AXI4_VALID2READY (default) or AXI4_TRANS2READY.

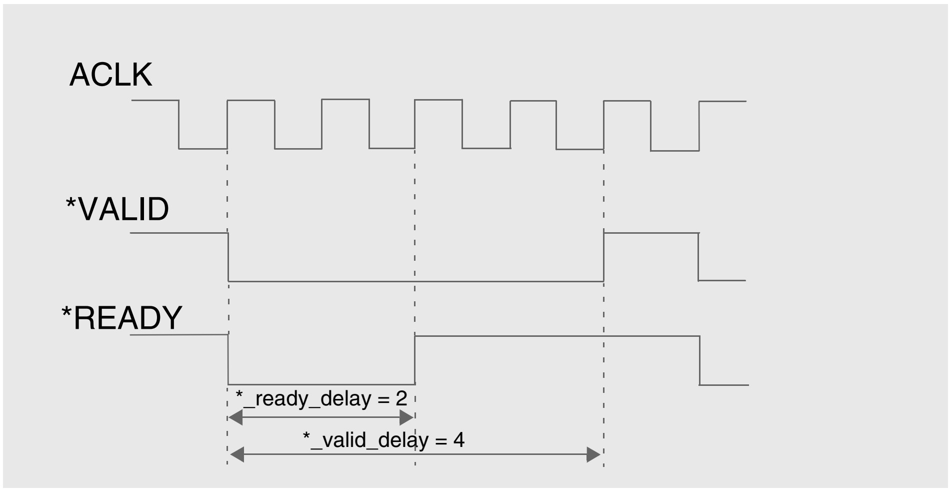
The default configuration (*master_ready_delay_mode* = AXI4_VALID2READY) corresponds to the delay measured from the positive edge of ACLK when *VALID is asserted. Figure 6-2 shows how to achieve a *VALID before *READY handshake, respectively.

Figure 6-2. master_ready_delay_mode = AXI4_VALID2READY



The nondefault configuration (*master_ready_delay_mode* = AXI4_TRANS2READY) corresponds to the delay measured from the completion of a previous transaction phase (*VALID and *READY both asserted). Figure 6-3 shows how to achieve a *READY before *VALID handshake.

Figure 6-3. master_ready_delay_mode = AXI4_TRANS2READY



Example 6-1 shows the configuration of the *master_ready_delay_mode* to its default value.

Example 6-1. master_ready_delay_mode

```
// Enum type for master ready delay mode
// AXI4_VALID2READY - Ready delay for a phase will be applied from
//                    start of phase (Means from when VALID is asserted).
// AXI4_TRANS2READY - Ready delay will be applied from the end of
//                    previous phase. This might result in ready before valid.
typedef enum bit
{
   AXI4_VALID2READY = 1'b0,
   AXI4_TRANS2READY = 1'b1
} axi4_master_ready_delay_mode_e;
```

```
// Master ready delay mode selection : default it is VALID2READY
axi4_master_ready_delay_mode_e master_ready_delay_mode =
AXI4_VALID2READY;
```

m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay

The *m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay* variable holds the BREADY signal delay. The delay value extends the length of the write response phase by a number of ACLK cycles. The starting point of the delay is determined by the *master_ready_delay_mode* variable configuration.

Example 6-2 shows the AWREADY signal delayed by two ACLK cycles. You can edit this variable to change the AWREADY signal delay.

Example 6-2. m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay

```
// Variable : m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay
int m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay = 2;
```

m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay

The *m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay* variable holds the RREADY signal delay. The delay value extends the length of each read data phase (beat) by a number of ACLK cycles. The starting point of the delay is determined by the *master_ready_delay_mode* variable configuration.

Example 6-3 shows the RREADY signal delayed by two ACLK cycles. You can edit this variable to change the RREADY signal delay.

Example 6-3. m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay

```
// Variable : m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay
int m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay = 2;
```

Configuration and Initialization

In an *initial* block, the master test program defines the transaction variable *trans* of type *axi4_transaction*, which hold the record of each transaction during its lifetime, as shown in Example 6-4. The initial wait for the ARESETn signal to be deactivated, followed by a positive ACLK edge, satisfies the protocol requirement detailed in Section A3.1.2 of the AXI Protocol Specification.

Example 6-4. Configuration and Initialization

```
initial
begin
   axi4_transaction trans;
   bit [AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH-1:0] data_word;

   /*******************
   ** Initialization **
```

```
        *******************/
        bfm.wait_on(AXI4_RESET_0_TO_1);
        bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);
```

Create and Execute Write Transactions

To generate AXI4 protocol traffic, the master test program must create the transaction *trans* before executing it. The code excerpt in Example 6-5 calls the *create_write_transaction()* function, providing only the start address argument of the transaction.

This example has an AXI4 data bus width of 32 bits; therefore, a single beat of data conveys 4 bytes across the data bus. The call to the *set_data_words()* function sets the *data_words* transaction field with the value of 1 on byte lane 1, resulting in a value of 32'h0000_0100. However, the AXI4 protocol permits narrow transfers with the use of the write strobes signal WSTRB to indicate which byte lane contains valid write data, and therefore indicates to the slave DUT which data byte lane will be written into memory. Similarly, you can call the *set_write_strobes()* function to set the *write_strobes* transaction field with the value of 4'b0010, indicating that only valid data is being transferred on byte lane 1. The write transaction *trans* then executes on the protocol signals by calling the *execute_transaction()* function.

All other write transaction fields default to legal protocol values (see *create_write_transaction()* for details).

Example 6-5. Create and Execute Write Transactions

```
/************************
** Traffic generation: **
************************/
// 4 x Writes
// Write data value 1 on byte lanes 1 to address 1.
trans = bfm.create_write_transaction(1);
trans.set_data_words(32'h0000_0100);
trans.set_write_strobes(4'b0010, 0);
$display ( "@ %t, master_test_program: Writing data (1) to address (1)",
$time);

// By default it will run in Blocking mode
bfm.execute_transaction(trans);
```

In the complete master test program, three subsequent write transactions are created and executed in a similar manner to Example 6-5.

Create and Execute Read Transactions

The code excerpt in Example 6-6 reads the data that has been previously written into the slave memory. The master test program first creates a read transaction *trans* by calling the *create_read_transaction()* function, providing only the start address argument.

The read data is obtained by calling the *get_data_words* function to get the *data_words* transaction field value. The result of the read data is compared with the expected data, and a message displays the transcript.

Example 6-6. Create and Execute Read Transactions

```
// Read data from address 1.
trans = bfm.create_read_transaction(1);

bfm.execute_transaction(trans);
if (trans.get_data_words == 32'h0000_0100)
   $display ( "@ %t, master_test_program: Read correct data (1) at
            address (1)", $time);
else
   $display ( "@ %t master_test_program: Error: Expected data (1) at
         address 1, but got %d", $time, trans.get_data_words);
```

In the complete master test program, three subsequent read transactions are created and executed in a similar manner to Example 6-6.

handle_write_resp_ready()

The *handle_write_resp_ready()* task handles the BREADY signal for the write response channel. In a *forever* loop, it delays the assertion of the BREADY signal based on the settings of the *master_ready_delay_mode* and *m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay* as shown in Example 6-7.

If the *master_delay_ready_mode* = *AXI4_VALID2READY*, then the BREADY signal is immediately deasserted using the nonblocking call to the *execute_write_resp_ready()* task and waits for a write channel response phase to occur with a call to the blocking *get_write_response_cycle()* task. A received write response phase indicates that the BVALID signal has been asserted, triggering the starting point for the delay of the BREADY signal by the number of ACLK cycles defined by *m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay*. After the delay, another call to the *execute_write_resp_ready()* task to assert the BREADY signal completes the BREADY handling. The *seen_valid_ready* flag is set to indicate the end of a response phase when both BVALID and BREADY are asserted, and the completion of the write transaction.

If the *master_delay_ready_mode* = *AXI4_TRANS2READY,* then a check of the *seen_valid_ready* flag is performed to indicate that a previous write transaction has completed. If a write transaction is still active (indicated by either BVALID or BREADY not asserted), then the code waits until the previous write transaction has completed. The BREADY signal is deasserted using the nonblocking call to the *execute_write_resp_ready()* task and waits for the number of ACLK cycles defined by *m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay*. A nonblocking call to the *execute_write_resp_ready()* task to assert the BREADY signal completes the BREADY handling. The *seen_valid_ready* flag is cleared to indicate that only BREADY has been asserted.

Example 6-7. handle_write_resp_ready()

```
// Task : handle_write_resp_ready
// This method assert/de-assert the write response channel ready signal.
// Assertion and de-assertion is done based on following variable's value:
// m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay
// master_ready_delay_mode
task automatic handle_write_resp_ready;
   bit seen_valid_ready;

   int tmp_ready_delay;
   axi4_master_ready_delay_mode_e tmp_mode;

   forever
   begin
      wait(m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay > 0);
      tmp_ready_delay = m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay;
      tmp_mode        = master_ready_delay_mode;

      if (tmp_mode == AXI4_VALID2READY)
      begin
         fork
            bfm.execute_write_resp_ready(1'b0);
         join_none

         bfm.get_write_response_cycle;
         repeat(tmp_ready_delay - 1) bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);

         bfm.execute_write_resp_ready(1'b1);
         seen_valid_ready = 1'b1;
      end
      else  // AXI4_TRANS2READY
      begin
         if (seen_valid_ready == 1'b0)
         begin
            do
               bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);
            while (!((bfm.BVALID === 1'b1) && (bfm.BREADY === 1'b1)));
         end

         fork
            bfm.execute_write_resp_ready(1'b0);
         join_none

         repeat(tmp_ready_delay) bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);

         fork
            bfm.execute_write_resp_ready(1'b1);
         join_none
         seen_valid_ready = 1'b0;
      end
   end
endtask
```

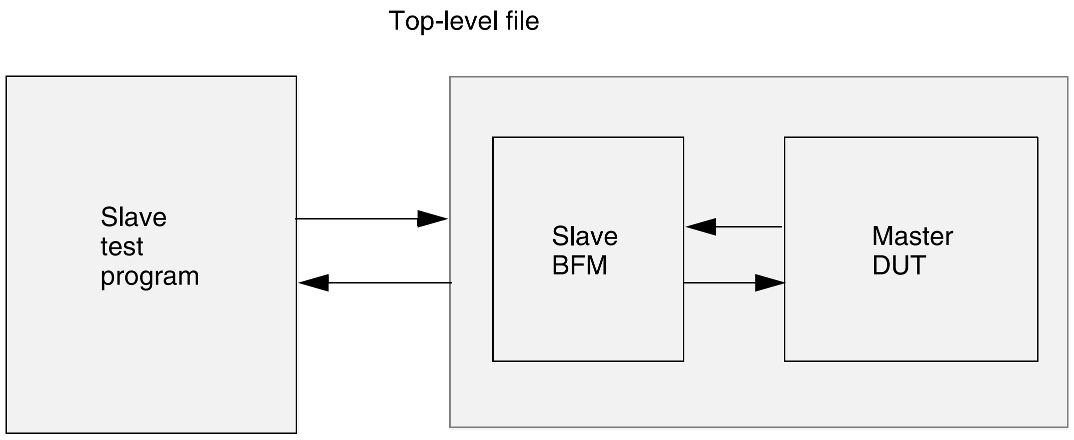
handle_read_data_ready()

The *handle_read_data_ready()* task handles the RREADY signal for the read data channel. It delays the assertion of the RREADY signal based on the settings of *master_ready_delay_mode* and *m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay*. The *handle_read_data_ready()* task code is similar in operation to the *handle_write_resp_ready()* task.

Verifying a Master DUT

A master DUT component is connected to a slave BFM at the signal-level. A slave test program, written at the transaction-level, generates stimulus via the slave BFM to verify the master DUT. Figure 6-4 illustrates a typical top-level test bench environment.

Figure 6-4. Master DUT Top-Level Test Bench Environment



In this example, the slave test program is a simple memory model.

A top-level file instantiates and connects all the components required to test and monitor the DUT, and controls the system clock (ACLK) and reset (ARESETn) signals.

BFM Slave Test Program

The slave test program is a memory model that contains two APIs: a Basic Slave API Definition and an Advanced Slave API Definition.

The Basic Slave API Definition allows you to create a wide range of stimulus scenarios to test a master DUT. This API definition simplifies the creation of slave stimulus based on the default response of OKAY to master read and write transactions. The Advanced Slave API Definition allows you to create additional response scenarios to transactions.

Note

For a complete code example of this slave test program, refer to the installed Mentor Verification IP Altera Edition kit in the following directory:
<install_dir>\mentor_vip_ae\axi4lite\qsys-examples\ex1_back_to_back_sv\slave_test_program.sv

Basic Slave API Definition

The Basic Slave Test Program API contains the following elements:

- Functions that read and write a byte of data to Internal Memory include *do_byte_read()* and *do_byte_write()*, respectively.
- Functions *set_read_data_valid_delay()* and *set_wr_resp_valid_delay()* to configure the delay of the read data channel RVALID, and write response channel BVALID signals, respectively.
- Variables *m_rd_addr_phase_ready_delay* and *m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay* to configure the delay of the read/write address channel ARVALID/AWVALID signals, and *m_wr_data_phase_ready_delay* to configure the delay of the write response channel BVALID signal.
- A *slave_ready_delay_mode* variable to configure the behavior of the handshake signals *VALID to *READY delay.

Internal Memory

The internal memory for the slave is defined as a sparse array of 8 bits, so that each byte of data is stored as an address/data pair.

Example 6-8. Internal Memory

```
// Storage for a memory
bit [7:0] mem [*];
```

do_byte_read()

The *do_byte_read()* function, when called, will read a data byte from the Internal Memory *mem,* given an address location as shown below.

You can edit this function to modify the way the read data is extracted from the internal memory.

Example 6-9. do_byte_read()

```
// Function : do_byte_read
// Function to provide read data byte from memory at
// particular input address
function bit[7:0] do_byte_read(addr_t addr);
   return mem[addr];
endfunction
```

do_byte_write()

The *do_byte_write()* function, when called, writes a data byte to the Internal Memory *mem*, given an address location as shown below.

You can edit this function to modify the way the write data is stored in the internal memory.

Example 6-10. do_byte_write()

```
// Function : do_byte_write
// Function to write data byte to memory at particular
// input address
function void do_byte_write(addr_t addr, bit [7:0] data);
   mem[addr] = data;
endfunction
```

m_rd_addr_phase_ready_delay

The *m_rd_addr_phase_ready_delay* variable holds the ARREADY signal delay. The delay value extends the length of the read address phase by a number of ACLK cycles. The starting point of the delay is determined by the *slave_ready_delay_mode* variable configuration.

Example 6-11 shows the ARREADY signal delayed by two ACLK cycles. You can edit this variable to change the ARREADY signal delay.

Example 6-11. m_rd_addr_phase_ready_delay

```
// Variable : m_rd_addr_phase_ready_delay
int m_rd_addr_phase_ready_delay = 2;
```

m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay

The *m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay* variable holds the AWREADY signal delay. The delay value extends the length of the write address phase by a number of ACLK cycles. The starting point of the delay is determined by the *slave_ready_delay_mode* variable configuration.

Example 6-12 shows the AWREADY signal delayed by two ACLK cycles. You can edit this variable to change the AWREADY signal delay.

Example 6-12. m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay

```
// Variable : m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay
int m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay = 2;
```

m_wr_data_phase_ready_delay

The *m_wr_data_phase_ready_delay* variable holds the WREADY signal delay. The delay value extends the length of each write data phase (beat) in a write data burst by a number of ACLK cycles. The starting point of the delay is determined by the *slave_ready_delay_mode* variable configuration.

Example 6-13 shows the WREADY signal delayed by two ACLK cycles. You can edit this function to change the WREADY signal delay.

Example 6-13. m_wr_data_phase_ready_delay

```
// Variable : m_wr_data_phase_ready_delay
int m_wr_data_phase_ready_delay = 2;
```

set_read_data_valid_delay()

The *set_read_data_valid_delay()* function, when called, configures the RVALID signal to be delayed by a number of ACLK cycles with the effect of delaying the start of each read data phase (beat). The delay value of the RVALID signal is stored in the *data_valid_delay* transaction field.

Example 6-14 shows the RVALID signal delay incrementing by an ACLK cycle between each read data phase for the length of the burst. You can edit this function to change the RVALID signal delay.

Example 6-14. set_read_data_valid_delay()

```
// Function : set_read_data_valid_delay
// This is used to set read data phase valid delays to start driving
// read data/response phases after specified delay.
function void set_read_data_valid_delay(axi4_transaction trans);
   trans.set_data_valid_delay(2);
endfunction
```

set_wr_resp_valid_delay()

The *set_wr_resp_valid_delay()* function, when called, configures the BVALID signal to be delayed by a number of ACLK cycles with the effect of delaying the start of the write response phase. The delay value of the BVALID signal is stored in the *write_response_valid_delay* transaction field.

Example 6-15 shows the BVALID signal delay set to two ACLK cycles. You can edit this function to change the BVALID signal delay.

Example 6-15. set_wr_resp_valid_delay()

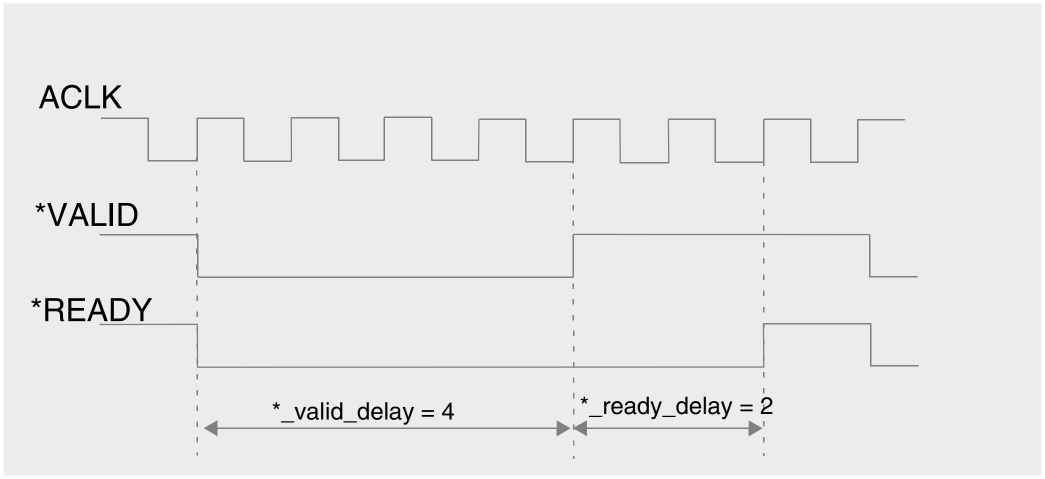
```
// Function : set_wr_resp_valid_delay
// This is used to set write response phase valid delay to start
// driving write response phase after specified delay.
function void set_wr_resp_valid_delay(axi4_transaction trans);
   trans.set_write_response_valid_delay(2);
endfunction
```

slave_ready_delay_mode

The *slave_ready_delay_mode* variable holds the configuration that defines the starting point of any delay applied to the *READY signals. You can configure it to the enumerated type values of AXI4_VALID2READY (default) or AXI4_TRANS2READY.

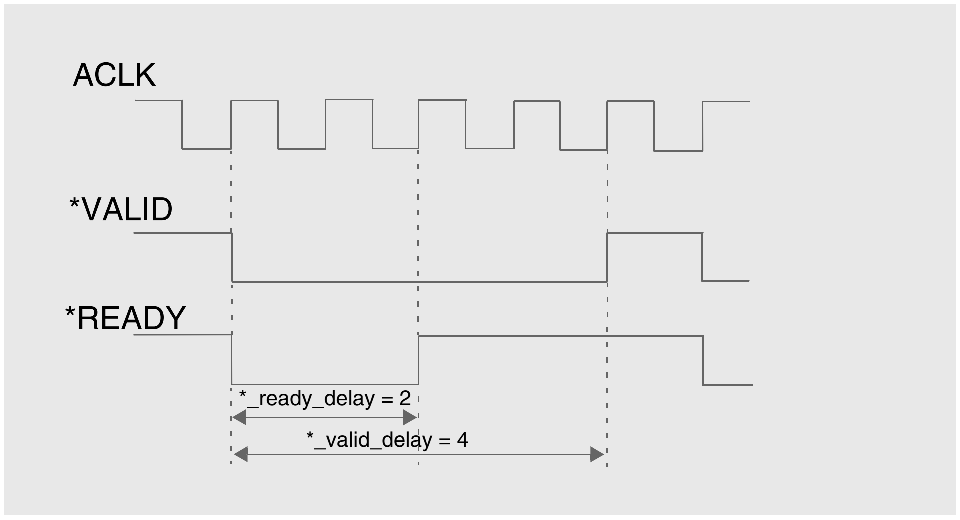
The default configuration (*slave_ready_delay_mode* = *AXI4_VALID2READY*) corresponds to the delay measured from the positive edge of ACLK when *VALID is asserted. Figure 6-5 shows how to achieve a *VALID before *READY handshake.

Figure 6-5. slave_ready_delay_mode = AXI4_VALID2READY



The nondefault configuration (*slave_ready_delay_mode* = *AXI4_TRANS2READY*) corresponds to the delay measured from the completion of a previous transaction phase (*VALID and *READY both asserted). Figure 6-6 shows how to achieve a *READY before *VALID handshake.

Figure 6-6. slave_ready_delay_mode = AXI4_TRANS2READY



Example 6-16 shows the configuration of the *slave_ready_delay_mode* to its default value.

Example 6-16. slave_ready_delay_mode

```
// Enum type for slave ready delay mode
  // AXI4_VALID2READY - Ready delay for a phase will be applied from
  //                     start of phase (Means from when VALID is asserted).
  // AXI4_TRANS2READY - Ready delay will be applied from the end of
  //                     previous phase. This might result in ready before
valid.
  typedef enum bit
  {
    AXI4_VALID2READY = 1'b0,
    AXI4_TRANS2READY = 1'b1
  } axi4_slave_ready_delay_mode_e;

// Slave ready delay mode seclection : default it is AXI4_VALID2READY
axi4_slave_ready_delay_mode_e slave_ready_delay_mode = AXI4_VALID2READY;
```

Note

In addition to the previous variables and procedures, you can configure other aspects of the AXI4-Lite Slave BFM by using the procedures *"set_config()"* on page 69 and *"get_config()"* on page 70.

Using the Basic Slave Test Program API

There are a set of tasks and functions that you can use to create stimulus scenarios based on a memory-model slave with a minimal amount of editing, as described in the Basic Slave API Definition section.

Consider the following configurations when using the slave test program.

Advanced Slave API Definition

Note

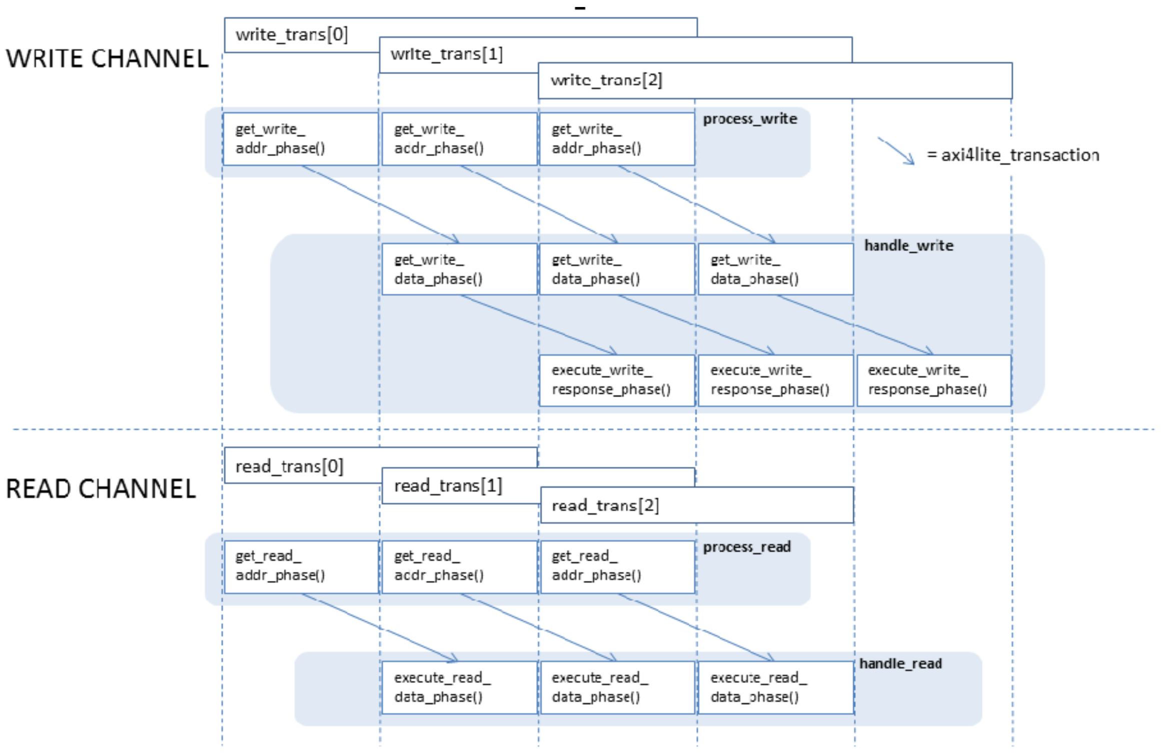
You are not required to edit the following Advance Slave API unless you require a different response than the default (OKAY) response.

The remaining section of this tutorial presents a walk-through of the Advanced Slave API in the slave test program. It consists of four main tasks: *process_read()*, *process_write()*, *handle_read()*, and *handle_write()* in the slave test program, as shown in Figure 6-7. There are additional *handle_write_addr_ready()*, *handle_read_addr_ready()* and *handle_write_data_ready()* tasks to handle the handshake AWREADY, ARREADY and WREADY signals, respectively.

The Advanced Slave API is capable of handling pipelined transactions. Pipelining can occur when a transaction starts before a previous transaction has completed. Therefore, a write transaction that starts before a previous write transaction has completed can be pipelined. Figure 6-7 shows the write channel with three concurrent *write_trans* transactions, whereby the *get_write_addr_phase[2]*, *get_write_data_phase[1]*, and *execute_write_response_phase[0]* are concurrently active on the write address, data, and response channels, respectively.

Similarly, a read transaction that starts before a previous read transaction has completed can be pipelined. Figure 6-7 shows the read channel with two concurrent *read_trans* transactions, whereby the *get_read_addr_phase[1]* and *execute_read_data_phase[0]* are concurrently active on the read address and data channels, respectively.

Figure 6-7. Slave Test Program Advanced API Tasks



Initial Block

In an *initial* block, the slave test program configures the maximum number of outstanding read and write transactions. The slave test program then starts the processing of any read or write transactions, and the handling of the channel *READY signals in a fork-join block, as shown in Example 6-17.

Example 6-17. Initialization and Transaction Processing

```
initial
begin

   // Traffic generation
   fork
      process_read;
      process_write;
      handle_write_addr_ready;
      handle_read_addr_ready;
      handle_write_data_ready;
   join
end
```

process_read()

The *process_read()* task loops forever, processing read transactions as they occur from the master. A local transaction variable *read_trans* of type *axi4_transaction* is defined to hold a record of the read transaction while it is being processed. A slave transaction is created by calling the *create_slave_transaction()* function and assigned to the *read_trans* record.

The subsequent *fork-join_none* block performs a nonblocking statement so that the *process_read()* task can begin again to create another read transaction record and get another read address phase before the current read transaction has completed. This permits concurrent read transactions to occur if the master issues a series of read address phases before any previous read transactions have completed.

In the *fork-join_none* block, the *read_trans* record is passed into the *handle_read()* function via the variable *t*.

Example 6-18. process_read()

```
// Task : process_read
// This method keep receiving read address phase and calls another
// method to process received transaction.
task process_read;
  forever
  begin
    axi4_transaction read_trans;

    read_trans = bfm.create_slave_transaction();
    bfm.get_read_addr_phase(read_trans);

    fork
      begin
        automatic axi4_transaction t = read_trans;
        handle_read(t);
      end
    join_none
    #0;
  end
endtask
```

handle_read()

The *handle_read()* task gets the data from the Internal Memory as a a phase (beat). The *read_trans* argument contains the record of the read transaction up to the point of this task call, namely the content of the read address phase.

The call to *set_read_data_valid_delay()* configures the RVALID signal delay for each phase (beat).

In a *loop*, the call to the *get_read_addr()* helper function returns the actual address *addr* for a particular byte location. This byte address is used to read the data byte from Internal Memory with the call to the *do_byte_read()* function, assigning the local *mem_data* variable with read data *do_byte_read()*. The call to the *set_read_data()* helper function sets the byte within the read transaction record. The loop continues reading and setting the read data from internal memory for the whole of the read data phase (beat).

The read data phase is executed over the protocol signals by calling the execute_read_data_phase().

Example 6-19. handle_read

```
// Task : handle_read
  // This method reads data from memory and send read data/response either
at
  // burst or phase level depending upon slave working mode.
  task automatic handle_read(input axi4_transaction read_trans);
    addr_t addr[];
```

```
        bit [7:0] mem_data[];

        set_read_data_valid_delay(read_trans);
        void'(bfm.get_read_addr(read_trans, 0,addr));

        mem_data = new[addr.size()];
        for(int j = 0; j < addr.size(); j++)
          mem_data[j] = do_byte_read(addr[j]);

        bfm.set_read_data(read_trans, 0, addr, mem_data);
        bfm.execute_read_data_phase(read_trans);
      endtask
```

process_write()

The processing of write transactions in the slave test program works in a similar way as that previously described for the *process_read()* task.

Example 6-20. process_write

```
    // Task : process_write
    // This method keep receiving write address phase and calls another
    // method to process received transaction.
    task process_write;
      forever
      begin
        axi4_transaction write_trans;

        write_trans = bfm.create_slave_transaction();
        bfm.get_write_addr_phase(write_trans);

        fork
          begin
            automatic axi4_transaction t = write_trans;
            handle_write(t);
          end
        join_none
        #0;
      end
    endtask
```

handle_write()

The *handle_write()* task works in a similar way as that previously described for the *handle_read()* task. The main difference is that the write transaction handling gets the write data phase and stores it in the slave test program Internal Memory, and adhering to the state of the WSTRB write strobes signal. There is an additional write response phase that is required for the write response channel, as shown in Example 6-21.

Example 6-21. handle_write()

```
    // Task : handle_write
      // This method receive write data burst or phases for write transaction
```

```
// depending upon slave working mode, write data to memory and then send
// response
task automatic handle_write(input axi4_transaction write_trans);
  addr_t addr[];
  bit [7:0] data[];
  bit last;

  bfm.get_write_data_phase(write_trans,0,last);

  void'(bfm.get_write_addr_data(write_trans, 0, addr, data));
  for (int j = 0; j < addr.size(); j++)
    do_byte_write(addr[j], data[j]);

  set_wr_resp_valid_delay(write_trans);
  bfm.execute_write_response_phase(write_trans);
endtask
```

handle_write_addr_ready()

The *handle_write_addr_ready()* task handles the AWREADY signal for the write address channel. In a forever loop, it delays the assertion of the AWREADY signal based on the settings of the *slave_ready_delay_mode* and *m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay* as shown in Example 6-22.

If the *slave_delay_ready_mode* = AXI4_VALID2READY, then the AWREADY signal is deasserted using the nonblocking call to the *execute_write_data_ready()* task and waits for a write channel address phase to occur with a call to the blocking *get_write_addr_cycle()* task. A received write address phase indicates that the AWVALID signal has been asserted, triggering the starting point for the delay of the AWREADY signal by the number of ACLK cycles defined by *m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay*. Another call to the *execute_write_addr_ready()* task to assert the AWREADY signal completes the AWREADY handling. The *seen_valid_ready* flag is set to indicate the end of a address phase when both AWVALID and AWREADY are asserted.

If the *slave_delay_ready_mode* = AXI4_TRANS2READY, then a check of the *seen_valid_ready* flag is performed to indicate that a previous write address phase has completed. If a write address phase is still active (indicated by either AWVALID or AWREADY not asserted), then the code waits until the previous write address phase has completed. The AWREADY signal is then deasserted using the nonblocking call to the *execute_write_addr_ready()* task and waits for the number of ACLK cycles defined by *m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay*. A nonblocking call to the *execute_write_addr_ready()* task to assert the AWREADY signal completes the AWREADY handling. The *seen_valid_ready* flag is cleared to indicate that only AWREADY has been asserted.

Example 6-22. handle_write_addr_ready()

```
// Task : handle_write_addr_ready
  // This method assert/de-assert the write address channel ready signal.
  // Assertion and de-assertion is done based on
m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay
```

```
task automatic handle_write_addr_ready;
  bit seen_valid_ready;

  int tmp_ready_delay;
  axi4_slave_ready_delay_mode_e tmp_mode;

  forever
  begin
    wait(m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay > 0);
    tmp_ready_delay = m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay;
    tmp_mode        = slave_ready_delay_mode;

    if (tmp_mode == AXI4_VALID2READY)
    begin
      fork
        bfm.execute_write_addr_ready(1'b0);
      join_none

      bfm.get_write_addr_cycle;
      repeat(tmp_ready_delay - 1) bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);

      bfm.execute_write_addr_ready(1'b1);
      seen_valid_ready = 1'b1;
    end
    else  // AXI4_TRANS2READY
    begin
      if (seen_valid_ready == 1'b0)
      begin
        do
          bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);
        while (!((bfm.AWVALID === 1'b1) && (bfm.AWREADY === 1'b1)));
      end

      fork
        bfm.execute_write_addr_ready(1'b0);
      join_none

      repeat(tmp_ready_delay) bfm.wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE);

      fork
        bfm.execute_write_addr_ready(1'b1);
      join_none
      seen_valid_ready = 1'b0;
    end
  end
endtask
```

handle_read_addr_ready()

The *handle_read_addr_ready()* task handles the ARREADY signal for the read address channel. In a forever loop, it delays the assertion of the ARREADY signal based on the settings of the *slave_ready_delay_mode* and *m_rd_addr_phase_ready_delay*. The *handle_read_addr_ready()* task code is similar in operation to the *handle_write_addr_ready()* task.

handle_write_data_ready()

The *handle_write_data_ready()* task handles the WREADY signal for the write data channel. In a forever loop, it delays the assertion of the WREADY signal based on the settings of the *slave_ready_delay_mode* and *m_wr_data_phase_ready_delay*. The *handle_write_data_ready()* task code is similar in operation to the *handle_write_addr_ready()* task.

Chapter 7
VHDL API Overview

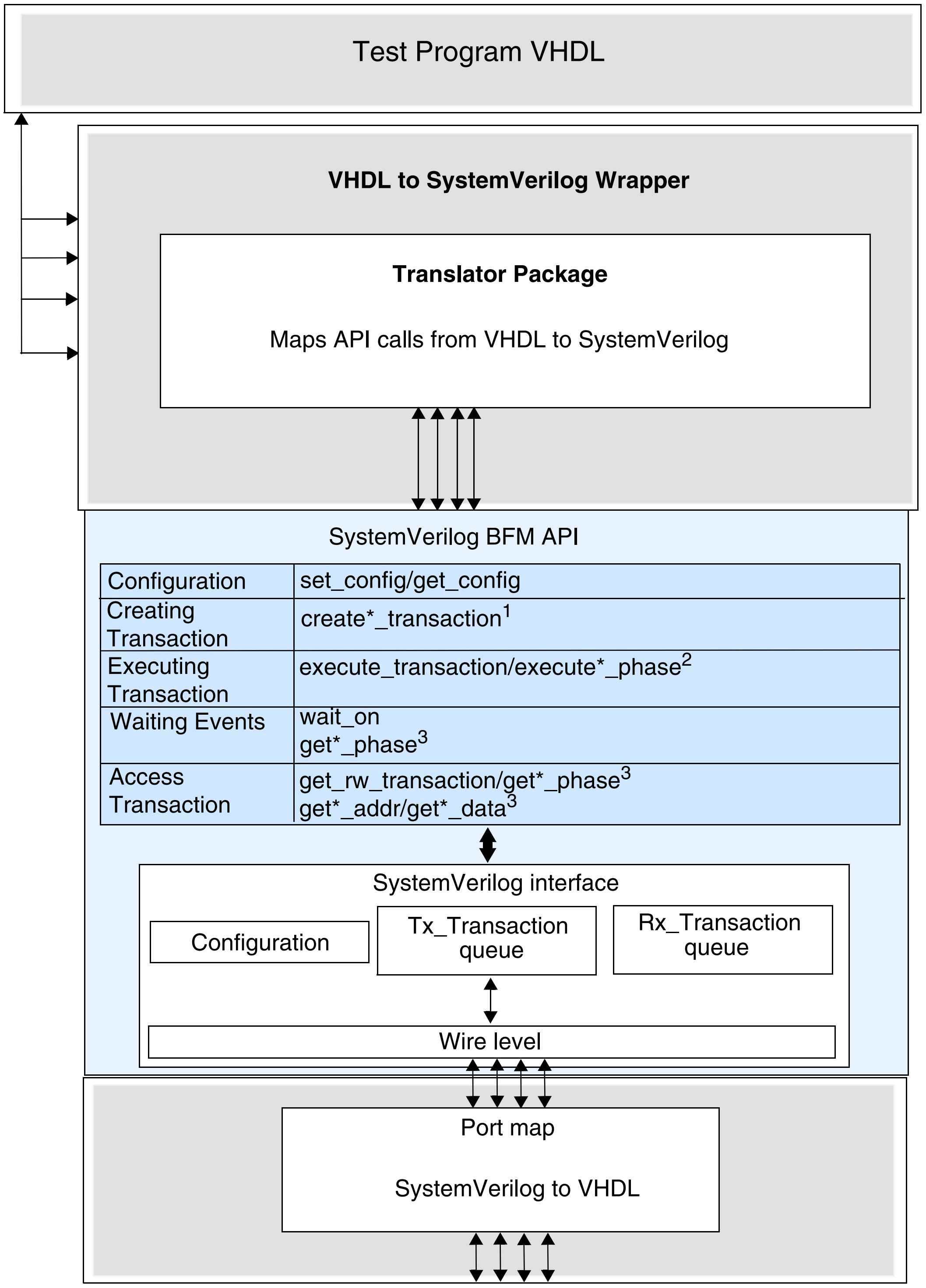
This chapter describes the VHDL Application Programming Interface (API) procedures for all the BFM (master, slave, and monitor) components. For each BFM, you can configure protocol transaction fields that execute on the protocol signals and control the operational transaction fields that permit delays between the handshake signals for each of the five address, data, and response channels.

In addition, each BFM API has procedures that wait for certain events to occur on the system clock and reset signals, and procedures to get and set information about a particular transaction.

Note

The VHDL API is built on the SystemVerilog API. An internal VHDL to SystemVerilog (SV) wrapper casts the VHDL BFM API procedure calls to the SystemVerilog BFM API tasks and functions.

Figure 7-1. VHDL BFM Internal Structure



Configuration	set_config/get_config
Creating Transaction	create*_transaction[1]
Executing Transaction	execute_transaction/execute*_phase[2]
Waiting Events	wait_on get*_phase[3]
Access Transaction	get_rw_transaction/get*_phase[3] get*_addr/get*_data[3]

Notes: 1. Refer to the create*_transaction()
2. Refer to the execute_transaction(), execute*_phase()
3. Refer to the get*()

Configuration

Configuration sets timeout delays, error reporting, and other attributes of the BFM.

Each BFM has a *set_config()* procedure that sets the configuration of the BFM. Refer to the individual BFM API for valid details. Each BFM has a *get_config()* procedure that returns the configuration of the BFM. Refer to the individual BFM API for details.

set_config()

For example, the following test program code sets the burst timeout factor for a transaction in the master BFM:

```
-- Setting the burst timeout factor to 1000
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_BURST_TIMEOUT_FACTOR, 1000, bfm_index,
      axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index))
```

In the above example, the *bfm_index* specifies the BFM.

get_config()

For example, the following test program code gets the protocol signal hold time in the master BFM:

```
-- Getting the burst timeout factor
get_config(4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME, config_value, bfm_index,
      axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index))
```

In the above example, the *bfm_index* specifies the BFM.

Creating Transactions

To transfer information between a master BFM and slave DUT over the protocol signals, you must create a transaction in the master test program. Similarly, to transfer information between a master DUT and a slave BFM, you must create a transaction in the slave test program. To monitor the transfer of information using a monitor BFM, you must create a transaction in the monitor test program.

Creating a transaction also creates a Transaction Record that exists for the life of the transaction. This transaction record can be accessed by the BFM test program during the life of the transaction as it transfers information between the master and slave.

Transaction Record

The transaction record contains transaction fields. There are two main types of transaction fields, *protocol* and *operational*.

Protocol fields hold transaction information that is transferred over the protocol signals. For example, the *prot* field is transferred over the AWPROT protocol signals during a write transaction.

Operational fields hold information about how and when the transaction is transferred. Their content is not transferred over protocol signals. For example, the *operation_mode* field controls the blocking/nonblocking operation of the transaction, but is not transferred over the protocol signals.

Transaction Definition

The transaction record exists as a SystemVerilog class definition in each BFM. Example 7-1 shows the definition of the *axi4_transaction* class members that form the transaction record.

Example 7-1. AXI4-Lite Transaction Definition

```
// Global Transaction Class
class axi4_transaction;
    // Protocol
    axi4_rw_e read_or_write;
    bit [((`MAX_AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH) - 1):0]  addr;
    axi4_prot_e prot;
    bit [3:0] region; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    axi4_size_e size; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    axi4_burst_e burst; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    axi4_lock_e lock; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    axi4_cache_e cache; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    bit [3:0] qos; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    bit [((`MAX_AXI4_ID_WIDTH) - 1):0] id // Not supported in AXI4-Lite;
    bit [7:0] burst_length;
    bit [((`MAX_AXI4_USER_WIDTH) - 1):0]  addr_user; // Not supported in
AXI4-Lite
    bit [((((`MAX_AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH > `MAX_AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH) ?
`MAX_AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH : `MAX_AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH)) - 1):0] data_words [];
    bit [(((`MAX_AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH / 8)) - 1):0] write_strobes [];
    axi4_response_e resp[];
    int address_valid_delay;
    int data_valid_delay[];
    int write_response_valid_delay;
    int address_ready_delay;
    int data_ready_delay[];
    int write_response_ready_delay;

    // Housekeeping
    bit gen_write_strobes = 1'b1;
    axi4_operation_mode_e  operation_mode  = AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING;
    axi4_write_data_mode_e write_data_mode = AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS;
    bit data_beat_done[]; // Not supported in AXI4-Lite
    bit transaction_done;

...

endclass
```

Note

The *axi4_transaction* class code above is shown for information only. Access to each transaction record during its lifetime is performed via the various *set*()* and *get*()* procedures detailed later in this chapter.

Table 7-1 describes the transaction fields in the transaction record.

Table 7-1. Transaction Fields

Transaction Field	Description
Protocol Transaction Fields	
addr	A bit vector (of length equal to the ARADDR/AWADDR signal bus width) to hold the start *address* of the first transfer (beat) of a transaction. The *addr* value is transferred over the ARADDR or AWADDR signals for a read or write transaction, respectively.
prot	An enumeration to hold the *protection* type of a transaction. The types of *protection* are as follows: AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA (default) AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST The *prot* value is transferred over the ARPROT or AWPROT signals for a read or write transaction, respectively.
data_words	A bit vector (of length equal to the greater of the RDATA/WDATA signal bus widths) to hold the *data words* of the payload. A *data_words* is transferred over the RDATA or WDATA signals per beat of the read or write data channel, respectively.
write_strobes	A bit vector (of length equal to the WDATA signal bus width divided by 8) to hold the write strobes. A *write_strobes* is transferred over the WSTRB signals per beat of the write data channel.

Table 7-1. Transaction Fields (cont.)

Transaction Field	Description

resp	An enumeration array to hold the *responses* of a transaction. The types of *response* are as follows:
	
	AXI4_OKAY;
	AXI4_SLVERR;
	AXI4_DECERR;
	
	A *resp* value is transferred over the RRESP signals per beat of the read data channel, and over the BRESP signals for a write transaction, respectively.

Operational Transaction Fields	
read_or_write	An enumeration to hold the *read or write* control flag. The types of *read_or_write* are: AXI4_TRANS_READ AXI4_TRANS_WRITE
address_valid_delay	An integer to hold the delay value of the address channel AWVALID and ARVALID signals (measured in ACLK cycles) for a read or write transaction, respectively.
data_valid_delay	An integer to hold the delay values of the data channel WVALID and RVALID signals (measured in ACLK cycles) for a read or write transaction, respectively.
write_response_valid_delay	An integer to hold the delay value of the write response channel BVALID signal (measured in ACLK cycles) for a write transaction.
address_ready_delay	An integer to hold the delay value of the address channel AWREADY and ARREADY signals (measured in ACLK cycles) for a read or write transaction, respectively.
data_ready_delay	An integer to hold the delay values of the data channel WREADY and RREADY signals (measured in ACLK cycles) for a read or write transaction, respectively.
write_response_ready_delay	An integer to hold the delay value of the write response channel BREADY signal (measured in ACLK cycles) for a write transaction.
gen_write_strobes	Automatically correct write strobes flag. Refer to Automatic Correction of Byte Lane Strobes for details.

Table 7-1. Transaction Fields (cont.)

Transaction Field	Description
operation_mode	An enumeration to hold the *operation mode* of the transaction. The two types of *operation_mode* are: AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING
write_data_mode	An enumeration to hold the *write data mode* control flag. The types of *write_data_mode* are as follows: AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation. AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS (default) The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*.
transaction_done	A bit to hold the *done* flag for a transaction when it has completed.

The master BFM API allows you to create a master transaction by providing only the address argument for a read, or write, transaction. All other protocol transaction fields automatically default to legal protocol values to create a complete master transaction record. Refer to the *create_read_transaction()* and *create_write_transaction()* procedures for default protocol read and write transaction field values.

The slave BFM API allows you to create a slave transaction by providing no arguments. All protocol transaction fields automatically default to legal protocol values to create a complete slave transaction record. Refer to the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure for default protocol transaction field values.

The monitor BFM API allows you to create a slave transaction by providing no arguments. All protocol transaction fields automatically default to legal protocol values to create a complete slave transaction record. Refer to the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure for default protocol transaction field values.

Note
If you change a protocol transaction field value from its default, it is then valid for all future transactions until a new value is set.

create*_transaction()

There are two master BFM API procedures available to create transactions, *create_read_transaction()* and *create_write_transaction()*, a *create_slave_transaction()* slave BFM API procedure, and a *create_monitor_transaction()* monitor BFM API procedure.

For example, to create a simple write transaction with a start address of 1, and a single data phase with a data value of 2, the master BFM test program would contain the following code:

```
-- Define local variables to hold the transaction ID
-- and data word.
variable tr_id: integer;
variable data_words :  std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0);

-- Create a master write transaction and set data_word value
create_write_transaction(1, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
data_words(31 downto 0) := x"00000200";
set_data_words(data_words, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

For example, to create a simple slave transaction the slave BFM test program would contain the following code:

```
-- Define a local variable write_trans to hold the transaction ID
variable write_trans : integer;

-- Create a slave transaction

create_slave_transaction(write_trans, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

In the above examples, the *bfm_index* specifies the BFM.

Executing Transactions

Executing a transaction in a master/slave BFM test program initiates the transaction onto the protocol signals. Each master/slave BFM API has execution tasks that push transactions into the BFM internal transaction queues. Figure 7-1 on page 138 illustrates the internal BFM structure.

execute_transaction(), execute*_phase()

If the DUT is a slave then the *execute_transaction()* procedure is called in the master BFM test program. If the DUT is a master, then the *execute*_phase()* procedures are is called in the slave BFM test program.

For example, to execute a master write transaction the master BFM test program would contain the following code:

```
-- By default the execution of a transaction will block
execute_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_2(bfm_index));
```

For example, to execute a slave write response phase, the slave BFM test program would contain the following code:

```
-- By default the execution of a phase will block
execute_write_response_phase(write_trans, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_2(bfm_index));
```

In the above example, the *bfm_index* specifies the BFM.

Waiting Events

Each BFM API has procedures that block the test program code execution until an event has occurred.

The *wait_on()* procedure blocks the test program until an ACLK or ARESETn signal event has occurred before proceeding.

The *get*_transaction(), get*_phase(), get*_cycle()* procedures block the test program code execution until a complete transaction, phase or cycle has occurred, respectively.

wait_on()

For example, a BFM test program can wait for the positive edge of the *ARESETn* signal using the following code:

```
-- Block test program execution until the positive edge of the clock
wait_on(AXI4_RESET_POSEDGE, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

In the above example, the *bfm_index* specifies the BFM.

get*_transaction(), get*_phase(), get*_cycle()

For example, a slave BFM test program can use a received write address phase to form the response of the write transaction. The test program gets the write address phase for the transaction by calling the *get_write_addr_phase()* procedure. This task blocks until it has received the address phase, allowing the test program to then call the *execute_write_response_phase()* procedure for the transaction, as shown in the slave BFM test program in Example 7-2 below.

Example 7-2. Slave BFM Test Program Using get_write_addr_phase()

```
create_slave_transaction(write_trans, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
get_write_addr_phase(write_trans, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

...

execute_write_response_phase(write_trans, bfm_index, AXI4_PATH_2,
axi4_tr_if_2(bfm_index));
```

In the above example, the *bfm_index* specifies the BFM.

Note

Not all BFM APIs support the full complement of *get*_transaction(), get*_phase(), get*_cycle()* tasks. Refer to the individual master, slave, or monitor BFM API for details.

Access Transaction Record

Each BFM API has procedures that can access a complete, or partially complete, Transaction Record. The *set*()* and *get*()* procedures are used in a test program to set and get information from the transaction record.

set*()

For example, to set the WSTRB write strobes signal in the Transaction Record of a write transaction, the master test program would use the *set_write_strobes()* procedure, as shown in the code below.

```
set_write_strobes(2, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

In the above example, the *bfm_index* specifies the BFM.

get*()

For example, a slave BFM test program uses a received write address phase to get the AWPROT signal value from the Transaction Record, as shown in the following slave BFM test program code.

```
-- Wait for a write address phase;
get_write_addr_phase(slave_trans, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

...
```

```
-- Get the AWPROT signal value of the slave transaction
get_prot(prot_value, slave_trans, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

In the above example, the *bfm_index* specifies the BFM.

Operational Transaction Fields

Operational transaction fields control the way in which a transaction is executed on the protocol signals. These fields also provide an indicator of when a data phase (beat) or transaction is complete.

Automatic Correction of Byte Lane Strobes

The master BFM permits unaligned and narrow write transfers by using byte lane strobe (WSTRB) signals to indicate which byte lanes contain valid data per data phase (beat).

When you create a write transaction in your master BFM test program, the *write_strobes* variable is available to store the write strobe values for each write data phase (beat) in the transaction. To assist you in creating the correct byte lane strobes, automatic correction of any previously set *write_strobes* is performed by default during execution of the write transaction, or write data phase (beat). You can disable this default behavior by setting the transaction field *gen_write_strobes = 0*, which allows any previously set *write_strobes* to pass through uncorrected onto the protocol WSTRB signals. In this mode, with the automatic correction disabled, you are responsible for setting the correct *write_strobes* for the whole transaction.

The automatic correction algorithm performs a bit-wise AND operation on any previously set *write_strobes*. To do the corrections, the automatic correction algorithm uses the equations described in the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification, Version 2.0, Section A3.4.1, that define valid write data byte lanes for legal protocol. Therefore, if you require automatic generation of all *write_strobes*, before the write transaction executes, you must set all *write_strobes* to 1, indicating that all bytes lanes initially contain valid write data, prior to execution of the write transaction. Automatic correction will then set the relevant *write_strobes* to 0 to produce legal protocol WSTRB signals.

Operation Mode

By default, each read or write transaction performs a blocking operation that prevents a following transaction from starting until the current active transaction completes.

You can configure this behavior to be nonblocking by setting the *operation_mode* transaction field to the enumerate type value AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING instead of the default AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING.

For example, in a master BFM test program, you can create a transaction by calling the *create_read_transaction()* or *create_write_transaction()* tasks, which creates a transaction record. Before executing the transaction record, you can change the *operation_mode* as follows:

```
-- Create a write transaction to create a transaction record
create_write_transaction(1, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Change operation_mode to be nonblocking in the transaction record
set_operation_mode(AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING, tr_id, bfm_index,
                     axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

In the above example, the *bfm_index* specifies the BFM.

Channel Handshake Delay

Each of the five protocol channels have *VALID and *READY handshake signals to control the rate at which information is transferred between a master and slave. Refer to Handshake Delay for details of the AXI4-Lite BFM API.

Handshake Delay

The delay between the *VALID and *READY handshake signals for each of the five protocol channels is controlled in a BFM test program using *execute_*_ready()*, *get_*_ready()* and *get_*_cycle()* procedures. The *execute_*_ready()* procedures place a value onto the *READY signals, and the *get_*_ready()* procedures retrieve a value from the *READY signals. The *get_*_cycle()* procedures wait for a *VALID signal to be asserted and are used to insert a delay between the *VALID and *READY signals in the BFM test program.

For example, the master BFM test program code below inserts a specified delay between the read channel RVALID and RREADY handshake signals using the *execute_read_data_ready()* and *get_read_data_cycle()* procedures.

```
-- Set the RREADY signal to ‘0’.
execute_read_data_ready(0, 1, bfm_index, AXI4_PATH_6,
                           axi4_tr_if_6(bfm_index));

-- Wait for the RVALID signal to be asserted.
get_read_data_cycle(bfm_index, AXI4_PATH_6,
                        axi4_tr_if_6(bfm_index));

-- Add delay between RVALID and RREADY.
for i in  0 to 2 loop
   wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE, bfm_index, AXI4_PATH_6,
            axi4_tr_if_6(bfm_index));
end loop;
execute_read_data_ready(1, 1, bfm_index, AXI4_PATH_6,
                           axi4_tr_if_6(bfm_index));
```

In this example, the *bfm_index* specifies the BFM.

*VALID Signal Delay Transaction Fields

The transaction record contains a *_valid_delay* transaction field for each of the five protocol channels to configure the delay value prior to the assertion of the *VALID signal for the channel. The master BFM holds the delay configuration for the *VALID signals that it asserts, and the slave BFM holds the delay configuration for the *VALID signals that it asserts. Table 7-2 specifies which *_valid_delay* fields are configured by the master and slave BFMs.

Table 7-2. Master and Slave *_valid_delay Configuration Fields

Signal	Operational Transaction Field	Configuration BFM
AWVALID	address_valid_delay	Master
WVALID	data_valid_delay	Master
BVALID	write_response_valid_delay	Slave
ARVALID	address_valid_delay	Master
RVALID	data_valid_delay	Slave

*READY Handshake Signal Delay Transaction Fields

The transaction record contains a *_ready_delay* transaction field for each of the five protocol channels to store the delay value between the assertion of the *VALID and *READY handshake signals for the channel. Table 7-3 specifies the *_ready_delay* field corresponding to the *READY signal delay.

Table 7-3. Master and Slave *_ready_delay Fields

Signal	Operational Transaction Field
AWREADY	address_ready_delay
WREADY	data_ready_delay
BREADY	write_response_ready_delay
ARREADY	address_ready_delay
RREADY	data_ready_delay

Transaction Done

There is a *transaction_done* transaction field in each transaction that indicates when the transaction has completed.

In a BFM test program, you call the respective BFM *get_transaction_done()* procedure to investigate whether a read or write transaction has completed.

Chapter 8
VHDL Master BFM

This chapter provides information about the VHDL master BFM. The BFM has an API that contains procedures to configure the BFM and to access the dynamic "Transaction Record" on page 28 during the life of the transaction.

Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments

The BFMs use VHDL procedure overloading, which results in the prototype having a number of prototype definitions for each procedure. Their arguments are unique to each procedure and concern the protocol or operational transaction fields for a transaction. These procedures have several common arguments, which can be optional, and include the arguments described below:

- *transaction_id* is an index number that identifies a specific transaction. Each new transaction automatically increments the index number until reaching 255, the maximum value, and then the index number automatically wraps to zero. The *transaction_id* uniquely identifies each transaction when there are a number of concurrently active transactions.
- *queue_id* is a unique identifier for each queue in a test bench. A queue is used to pass the record of a transaction between the address, data and response channels of a write transaction, and the address and data channels of a read transaction. There is a maximum of eight queues available within an AXI4 BFM-Lite. Refer to "Advanced Slave API Definition" *on page 350* for more details on the application of the *queue_id*.
- *bfm_id* is a unique identification number for each master, slave, and monitor BFM in a multiple BFM test bench.
- *path_id* is a unique identifier for each parallel process in a multiple process test bench. You must specify the *path_id* for test bench stimulus to replicate the pipelining features of a protocol in a VHDL test bench. If no pipelining is performed in the test bench stimulus (a single process), then specifying the *path_id* argument for the procedure is optional. There is a maximum of eight paths available within an AXI4 BFM-Lite. Refer to "Advanced Slave API Definition" *on page 350* for more details on the application of the *path_id*.
- *tr_if* is a signal definition that passes the content of a transaction between the VHDL and SystemVerilog environments.

Master BFM Protocol Support

The AXI4-Litemaster BFM supports the AMBA AXI4 protocol with restrictions detailed in "Protocol Restrictions" on page 17.

Master Timing and Events

For detailed timing diagrams of the protocol bus activity and details of the following master BFM API timing and events, refer to the relevant AMBA AXI Protocol Specification chapter.

The AMBA AXI Protocol Specification does not define any timescale or clock period with signal events sampled and driven at rising ACLK edges. Therefore, the master BFM does not contain any timescale, timeunit, or timeprecision declarations with the signal setup and hold times specified in units of simulator time-steps.

Master BFM Configuration

The master BFM supports the full range of signals defined for the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification. It has parameters you can use to configure the widths of the address and data signals, and transaction fields to configure timeout factors, setup and hold times, and so on.

You can change the address and data signal widths from their default settings by assigning them new values, usually performed in the top-level module of the test bench. These new values are then passed into the master BFM via a parameter port list of the master BFM component.

Table 8-1 lists the parameter names for the address and data signals, and their default values.

Table 8-1. Master BFM Signal Width Parameters

Signal Width Parameter	Description
AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH	Address signal width in bits. This applies to the ARADDR and AWADDR signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 32.
AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH	Read data signal width in bits. This applies to the RDATA signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 64.
AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH	Write data signal width in bits. This applies to the WDATA signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 64.
index	Uniquely identifies a Master BFM instance. It must be set to a different value for each Master BFM in the system. Default: 0.

Table 8-1. Master BFM Signal Width Parameters (cont.)

Signal Width Parameter	Description
READ_ISSUING_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding read transactions that can be issued from the Master BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.
WRITE_ISSUING_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding write transactions that can be issued from the Master BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.
COMBINED_ISSUING_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding combined read and write transactions that can be issued from the Master BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.

A master BFM has configuration fields that you can set via the *set_config()* function to configure timeout factors, setup and hold times, and so on. You can also get the value of a configuration field via the *get_config()* procedures. Table 8-2 describes the full list of configuration fields.

Table 8-2. Master BFM Configuration

Configuration Field	Description
Timing Variables	
AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME	The setup-time prior to the active edge of ACLK, in units of simulator time-steps for all signals.[1] Default: 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME	The hold-time after the active edge of ACLK, in units of simulator time-steps for all signals.[1] Default: 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_ FACTOR	The maximum timeout duration for a read/write transaction in clock cycles. Default: 100000.
AXI4_CONFIG_BURST_TIMEOUT_FACTOR	The maximum delay between the individual phases of a read/write transaction in clock cycles. Default: 10000.

Table 8-2. Master BFM Configuration (cont.)

Configuration Field	Description
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of AWVALID to the assertion of AWREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of ARVALID to the assertion of ARREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_RREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of RVALID to the assertion of RREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_BREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of BVALID to the assertion of BREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_WREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of WVALID to the assertion of WREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
Master Attributes	
AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4	Configures the AXI4 master BFM to be AXI4-Lite compatible. 0 = disabled (default) 1 = enabled
Slave Attributes	
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR	Configures the start address map for the slave.
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR	Configures the end address map for the slave.
Error Detection	
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS	Global enable/disable of all assertion checks in the BFM. 0 = disabled 1 = enabled (default)

Table 8-2. Master BFM Configuration (cont.)

Configuration Field	Description
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION	Individual enable/disable of assertion check in the BFM. 0 = disabled 1 = enabled (default)

1. Refer to Master Timing and Events for details of simulator time-steps.

Master Assertions

Each master BFM performs protocol error checking via built-in assertions.

Note
The built-in BFM assertions are independent of programming language and simulator.

Assertion Configuration

By default, all built-in assertions are enabled in the master BFM. To globally disable them in the master BFM, use the *set_config()* command as the following example illustrates.

```
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS,0,bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

Alternatively, you can disable individual built-in assertions by using a sequence of *get_config()* and *set_config()* commands on the respective assertion. For example, to disable assertion checking for the AWADDR signal changing between the AWVALID and AWREADY handshake signals, use the following sequence of commands:

```
-- Define a local bit vector to hold the value of the assertion bit vector
variable config_assert_bitvector : std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1
downto 0);

-- Get the current value of the assertion bit vector
get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION, config_assert_bitvector,
bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Assign the AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY assertion bit to 0
config_assert_bitvector(AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY) := '0';

-- Set the new value of the assertion bit vector
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION, config_assert_bitvector,
bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

Note
Do not confuse the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION bit vector with the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS global enable/disable.

To re-enable the AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY assertion, follow the above code sequence and assign the assertion within the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION bit vector to 1.

For a complete listing of assertions, refer to "AXI4-Lite Assertions" on page 375.

VHDL Master API

This section describes the VHDL Master API.

set_config()

This nonblocking procedure sets the configuration of the master BFM.

Prototype

```
procedure set_config
(
   config_name   : in std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
   config_val   : in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto
   0)|integer;
   bfm_id        : in integer;
   path_id       : in axi4_path_t; -- optional
   signal tr_if  : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
 );
```

Arguments

config_name	Configuration name: AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4 AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_RREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_BREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_WREADY AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR
config_val	Refer to "Master BFM Configuration" on page 152 for description and valid values.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
set_config(AXI4_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR, 1000, bfm_index,
        axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_config()

This nonblocking procedure gets the configuration of the master BFM.

Prototype

```
procedure get_config
(
   config_name    : in std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
   config_val     : out std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1
   downto 0)|integer;
   bfm_id         : in integer;
   path_id        : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if   : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

config_name	Configuration name: AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4 AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ASSERTION_TO_RREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ASSERTION_TO_BREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ASSERTION_TO_WREADY AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR
config_val	Refer to "Master BFM Configuration" on page 152 for description and valid values.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns config_val

Example

```
get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR, config_value,
     bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

create_write_transaction()

This nonblocking procedure creates a write transaction with a start address *addr* argument. All other transaction fields default to legal protocol values, unless previously assigned a value. It returns with the *transaction_id* argument.

Prototype

```
procedure create_write_transaction
(
   addr             : in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1
   downto 0)|integer;
   transaction_id   : out integer;
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments	addr	Start address
	transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
	bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
	path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
	tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Protocol Transaction Fields	prot	Protection:
		AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA; (default)
		AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
		AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
		AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
		AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
		AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
		AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
		AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

	data_words	Data words.
	write_strobes	Write strobes: Each strobe 0 or 1.

	resp	Response:
		AXI4_OKAY;
		AXI4_SLVERR;
		AXI4_DECERR;

Operational Transaction Fields	gen_write_strobes	Correction of write strobes for invalid byte lanes: 0 = write_strobes passed through to protocol signals. 1 = write_strobes auto-corrected for invalid byte lanes (default).

	operation_mode	Operation mode: AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING; AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING; (default)
	write_data_mode	Write data mode: AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS; The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation. AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS; (default) The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*
	address_valid_delay	Address channel A*VALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
	data_valid_delay	Write data channel WVALID delay array measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0 for all elements).
	write_response_read_delay	Write response channel BREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
	transaction_done	Write transaction *done* flag for this transaction.
Returns	transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151.

Example

```
-- Create a write data transaction to start address 16.
-- Returns the transaction ID (tr_id) for this created transaction.
create_write_transaction(16, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index);
```

create_read_transaction()

This nonblocking procedure creates a read transaction with a start address *addr* argument. All other transaction parameters default to legal protocol values, unless previously assigned a value. It returns with the *transaction_id* argument.

Prototype

```
procedure create_read_transaction
(
   addr             : in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1
   downto 0)|integer;
   transaction_id   : out integer;
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

addr	Start address
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

prot	Protection:
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA; (default)
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

data_words	Data words.

resp	Response:
	AXI4_OKAY;
	AXI4_SLVERR;
	AXI4_DECERR;

Operational Transaction Fields

operation_ mode	Operation mode: AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING; AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING; (default)

	address_valid_ delay	Address channel A*VALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
	data_ready_delay	Read data channel RREADY delay array measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
	transaction_done	Read transaction *done* flag for this transaction.
Returns	transaction_id	

Example

```
-- Create a read data transaction with start address 16.
-- Returns the transaction ID (tr_id) for this created transaction.
create_read_transaction(16, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_addr()

This nonblocking procedure sets the start address *addr* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or *create_read_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_addr
(
   addr : in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0) |
   integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

addr	Start address of transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151. for more details

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a read transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_read_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the start address to 1 for the tr_id transaction
set_addr(1, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_addr()

This nonblocking procedure gets the start address *addr* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or *create_read_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_addr
(
   addr : out std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0) |
   integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

addr	Start address of transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns addr

Example

```
-- Create a read transaction with start address of 1.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_read_transaction(1, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the start address addr of the tr_id transaction
get_addr(addr, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_prot()

This nonblocking procedure sets the protection *prot* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
set_prot
(
   prot: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

prot	Protection:
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA (default);
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a read transaction with start address of 1.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_read_transaction(1, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the protection field to a normal, secure, instruction access
-- for the tr_id transaction.
set_prot(AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_prot()

This nonblocking procedure gets the protection *prot* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
get_prot
(
   prot: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

prot	Protection:
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA;
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns prot

Example

```
-- Create a read transaction with start address of 1.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_read_transaction(1, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the protection field of the tr_id transaction.
get_prot(prot, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_data_words()

This nonblocking procedure sets a *data_words* field for a write transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_data_words
(
   data_words: in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0)
   | integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_words	Data words.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 1.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(1, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the data_words field to 2 for the data phase
-- for the tr_id transaction.
set_data_words(2, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_data_words()

This nonblocking procedure gets a *data_words* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
get_data_words
(
   data_words: out std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0)
   | integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_words	Data words.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns data_words

Example

```
-- Create a read transaction with start address of 1.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_read_transaction(1, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Get the data_words field for data phase
-- of the tr_id transaction.
get_data_words(data, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_write_strobes()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *write_strobes* field for a write transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_write_strobes
(
   write_strobes : in std_logic_vector (AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto
   0) | integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_strobes	Write strobes.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 1.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(1, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the write_strobes field to for the data phase
-- for the tr_id transaction.
set_write_strobes(2, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_strobes()

This nonblocking procedure gets a *write_strobes* field for a write transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_write_strobes
(
 write_strobes : out std_logic_vector (AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto
 0) | integer;
  transaction_id  : in integer;
  bfm_id : in integer;
  path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
  signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_strobes	Write strobes.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns write_strobes

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 1.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(1, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Get the write_strobes field for the data phase
-- of the tr_id transaction.
get_write_strobes(write_strobe, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_resp()

This nonblocking procedure sets a response *resp* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
set_resp
(
   resp: in std_logic_vector (AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0) |
   integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

resp	Transaction response:
	
	AXI4_OKAY = 0;
	AXI4_SLVERR = 2;
	AXI4_DECERR = 3;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note
You would not normally use this procedure in a master test program.

get_resp()

This nonblocking procedure gets a response *resp* field for a transaction that is identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
get_resp
(
   resp: out std_logic_vector (AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0) |
   integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

resp	Transaction response:
	
	AXI4_OKAY = 0;
	AXI4_SLVERR = 2;
	AXI4_DECERR = 3;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns resp

Example

```
-- Create a read transaction with start address of 1.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_read_transaction(1, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the response field for the data phase
-- of the tr_id transaction.
get_resp(read_resp, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_read_or_write()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *read_or_write* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
set_read_or_write
(
   read_or_write: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

read_or_write	Read or write transaction:
	
	AXI4_TRANS_READ = 0
	AXI4_TRANS_WRITE = 1

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note

You do not normally use this procedure in a master test program.

get_read_or_write()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *read_or_write* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
get_read_or_write
(
   read_or_write: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

read_or_write	Read or write transaction:
	
	AXI4_TRANS_READ = 0
	AXI4_TRANS_WRITE = 1

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns read_or_write

Example

```
-- Create a read transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_read_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the read_or_write field of the tr_id transaction.
get_read_or_write(read_or_write, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_gen_write_strobes()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *gen_write_strobes* field for a write transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_gen_write_strobes
(
   gen_write_strobes: in integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

gen_write_strobes	Correction of write strobes for invalid byte lanes: 0 = *write_strobes* passed through to protocol signals. 1 = *write_strobes* auto-corrected for invalid byte lanes (default).
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Disable the auto correction of the write strobes for the
-- tr_id transaction.
set_gen_write_strobes(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_gen_write_strobes()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *gen_write_strobes* field for a write transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_gen_write_strobes
(
   gen_write_strobes: out integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

gen_write_strobes	Correct write strobes flag: 0 = write_strobes passed through to protocol signals. 1 = write_strobes auto-corrected for invalid byte lanes.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns gen_write_strobes

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the auto correction write strobes flag of the tr_id transaction.
get_gen_write_strobes(write_strobes_flag, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_operation_mode()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *operation_mode* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
set_operation_mode
(
   operation_mode: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

operation_mode	Operation mode:
	
	AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING;
	AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING (default);

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns

None

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the operation mode field to nonblocking for tr_id transaction.
set_operation_mode(AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_operation_mode()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *operation_mode* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
get_operation_mode
(
   operation_mode: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

operation_mode	Operation mode:
	
	AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING;
	AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns operation_mode

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the operation mode field of the tr_id transaction.
get_operation_mode(operation_mode, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_write_data_mode()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *write_data_mode* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
set_write_data_mode
(
   write_data_mode: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_data_mode — Write data mode:

AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS;
The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation.

AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS; (default)
The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*.

transaction_id — Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

bfm_id — BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

path_id — (Optional) Parallel process path identifier:

AXI4_PATH_0
AXI4_PATH_1
AXI4_PATH_2
AXI4_PATH_3
AXI4_PATH_4

Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

tr_if — Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the write data mode field of the address and data phases for the
-- tr_id transaction
set_write_data_mode(AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_data_mode()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *write_data_mode* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
get_write_data_mode
(
   write_data_mode: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_data_mode	Write data mode: AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS; The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation. AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS; (default) The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns write_data_mode

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write data mode field of the tr_id transaction
get_write_data_mode(write_data_mode, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_address_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *address_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
set_address_valid_delay
(
   address_valid_delay: in integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

address_valid_delay	Address channel ARVALID/AWVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the address channel *VALID delay to 3 clock cycles
-- for the tr_id transaction.
set_address_valid_delay(3, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_address_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *address_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
get_address_valid_delay
(
   address_valid_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

address_valid_delay	Address channel ARVALID/AWVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns address_valid_delay

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write address channel AWVALID delay of the tr_id transaction.
get_address_valid_delay(address_valid_delay, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_address_ready_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *address_ready_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
get_address_ready_delay
(
   address_ready_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

address_ready_delay	Address channel A*READY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns address_ready_delay

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the address channel *READY delay of the tr_id transaction.
get_address_ready_delay(address_ready_delay, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_data_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *data_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_data_valid_delay
(
   data_valid_delay: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_valid_delay	Write data channel WVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the write channel WVALID delay to 3 ACLK cycles for the data
-- phase of the tr_id transaction.
set_data_valid_delay(3, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_data_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *data_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
get_data_valid_delay
(
   data_valid_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_valid_delay	Data channel array to store *VALID delays measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns data_valid_delay

Example

```
-- Create a read transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_read_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the read channel RVALID delay for the data
-- phase of the tr_id transaction.
get_data_valid_delay(data_valid_delay, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_data_ready_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *data_ready_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
get_data_ready_delay
(
   data_ready_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_ready_delay	Read data channel RREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns data_ready_delay

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Get the write data channel WREADY delay the data
-- phase of the tr_id transaction.
get_data_ready_delay(data_ready_delay, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_write_response_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *write_response_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_write_response_valid_delay
(
   write_response_valid_delay: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_response_valid_delay	Write data channel BVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns

None

Note
You do not normally use this procedure in a master test program.

get_write_response_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *write_response_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_write_response_valid_delay
(
   write_response_valid_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_response_valid_delay	Write data channel BVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns write_response_valid_delay

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write response channel BVALID delay of the tr_id transaction.
get_write_response_valid_delay(write_response_valid_delay, tr_id,
bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_response_ready_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *write_response_ready_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_write_response_ready_delay
(
   write_response_ready_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_response_ready_delay	Write data channel BREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns write_response_ready_delay

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write response channel BREADY delay of the tr_id transaction.
get_write_response_ready_delay(write_resp_ready_delay, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_transaction_done()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *transaction_done* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
set_transaction_done
(
   transaction_done : in integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_done	Transaction *done* flag for this transaction
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a read transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_read_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Set the read transaction_done flag of the tr_id transaction.
set_transaction_done(1, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_transaction_done()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *transaction_done* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
get_transaction_done
(
   transaction_done : out integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_done	Transaction *done* flag for this transaction
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns transaction_done

Example

```
-- Create a read transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_read_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the read transaction_done flag of the tr_id transaction.
get_transaction_done(transaction_done, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

execute_transaction()

This procedure executes a master transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument, previously created with either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure. A transaction can be blocking (default) or nonblocking, based on the setting of the transaction *operation_mode* field.

The results of *execute_transaction()* for write transactions varies based on how write transaction fields are set. If the transaction *gen_write_strobes* field is set, *execute_transaction ()* automatically corrects any previously set *write_strobes* field array elements. However, if the *gen_write_strobes* field is not set, then any previously assigned *write_strobes* field array elements will be passed onto the WSTRB protocol signals, which can result in a protocol violation if not correctly set. Refer to "Automatic Correction of Byte Lane Strobes" on page 147 for more details.

If the *write_data_mode* field for a write transaction is set to AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS, *execute_transaction ()* calls the *execute_write_addr_phase()* and *execute_write_data_phase()* procedures simultaneously; otherwise, *execute_write_data_phase()* is called after *execute_write_addr_phase()* so that the write data beat occurs after the write address phase (default). It then calls the *get_write_response_phase()* procedure to complete the write transaction.

For a read transaction, *execute_transaction()* calls the *execute_read_addr_phase()* procedure followed by the *get_read_data_phase()* procedure to complete the read transaction

Prototype

```
procedure execute_transaction
(
   transaction_id : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a read transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_read_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Execute the tr_id transaction.
execute_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

execute_write_addr_phase()

This procedure executes a master write address phase uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* procedure. This phase can be blocking (default) or nonblocking, defined by the transaction record *operation_mode* field.

It sets the AWVALID protocol signal at the appropriate time defined by the transaction record *address_valid_delay* field.

Prototype

```
procedure execute_write_addr_phase
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Execute the write address phase for the tr_id transaction.
execute_write_addr_phase(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

execute_read_addr_phase()

This procedure executes a master read address phase uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the procedure. This phase can be blocking (default) or nonblocking, defined by the transaction record *operation_mode* field.

It sets the ARVALID protocol signal at the appropriate time defined by the transaction record *address_valid_delay* field.

Prototype

```
procedure execute_read_addr_phase
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a read transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_read_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Execute the read address phase for the tr_id transaction.
execute_read_addr_phase(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

execute_write_data_phase()

This procedure executes a write data phase that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument and previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* procedure. This phase can be blocking (default) or nonblocking, defined by the transaction record *operation_mode* field.

The *execute_write_data_phase()* sets the WVALID protocol signal at the appropriate time defined by the transaction record *data_valid_delay* field when the phase complete.

Prototype

```
procedure execute_write_data_phase
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Execute the write data phase for the tr_id transaction.
execute_write_data_phase(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_, tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_read_data_phase()

This blocking procedure gets a read data phase that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the procedure. If this is the last phase (beat), then it sets the *transaction_done* field to 1 to indicate the whole read transaction is complete.

Example

Prototype

```
procedure get_read_data_phase
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

```
-- Create a read transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_read_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the read data phase of the tr_id transaction.
get_read_data_phase(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_response_phase()

This blocking procedure gets a write response phase that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_write_transaction()* procedure. It sets the *transaction_done* field to 1 when the transaction completes to indicate the whole transaction is complete.

Example

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_response_phase
(
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write response phase for the tr_id transaction.
get_write_response_phase(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_read_addr_ready()

This blocking procedure returns the value of the read address channel ARREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure get_read_addr_ready
(
   ready : out integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

ready	The value of the ARREADY signal.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns ready

Example

```
// Get the ARREADY signal value
bfm.get_read_addr_ready(ready, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_read_data_cycle()

This blocking procedure waits until the read data channel RVALID signal has been asserted.

Prototype

```
procedure get_read_data_cycle
(
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
// Wait for the RVALID signal to be asserted.
bfm.get_read_data_cycle(bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

execute_read_data_ready()

This procedure executes a read data ready by placing the *ready* argument value onto the RREADY signal. It will block (default) for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure execute_read_data_ready
(
   ready : in integer
   non_blocking_mode : in integer; --optional
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

ready	The value to be placed onto the RREADY signal
non_blocking_mode	(Optional) Nonblocking mode: 0 = Nonblocking 1 = Blocking (default)
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Set the RREADY signal to 1 and block for 1 ACLK cycle
execute_read_data_ready(1, 1, index, AXI4_PATH_6, axi4_tr_if_6(index));
```

get_write_addr_ready()

This blocking procedure returns the value of the write address channel AWREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_addr_ready
(
   ready : out integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

ready	The value of the AWREADY signal.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns ready

Example

```
// Get the AWREADY signal value
bfm.get_write_addr_ready(ready, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_data_ready()

This blocking procedure returns the value of the write data channel WREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_data_ready
(
   ready : out integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

ready	The value of the WREADY signal.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns ready

Example

```
// Get the WREADY signal value
bfm.get_write_data_ready(ready, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_response_cycle()

This blocking procedure waits until the write response channel BVALID signal has been asserted.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_response_cycle
(
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
// Wait for the BVALID signal to be asserted.
bfm.get_write_response_cycle(bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

execute_write_resp_ready()

This procedure executes a write response ready by placing the *ready* argument value onto the BREADY signal. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure execute_write_resp_ready
(
   ready : in integer;
   non_blocking_mode : in integer; --optional
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id           : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

ready	The value to be placed onto the BREADY signal
non_blocking_mode	(Optional) Nonblocking mode: 0 = Nonblocking 1 = Blocking (default)
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Set the BREADY signal to 1 and block for 1 ACLK cycle
execute_write_resp_ready(1, 1, index, AXI4_PATH_5, axi4_tr_if_5(index));
```

push_transaction_id()

This nonblocking procedure pushes a transaction ID into the back of a queue. The transaction is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure. The queue is identified by the *queue_id* argument.

Prototype

```
procedure push_transaction_id
(
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   queue_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
queue_id	Queue identifier: AXI4_QUEUE_ID_0 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_2 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_3 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_4 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_5 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_6 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Push the transaction record into queue 1 for the tr_id transaction.
push_transaction_id(tr_id, AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

pop_transaction_id()

This nonblocking (unless queue is empty) procedure pops a transaction ID from the front of a queue. The transaction is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure. The queue is identified by the *queue_id* argument.

If the queue is empty, then it will block until an entry becomes available.

Prototype

```
procedure pop_transaction_id
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   queue_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
queue_id	Queue identifier: AXI4_QUEUE_ID_0 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_2 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_3 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_4 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_5 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_6 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_7 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Pop the transaction record from queue 1 for the tr_id transaction.
pop_transaction_id(tr_id, AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

print()

This nonblocking procedure prints a transaction record that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
procedure print
(
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   print_delays : in integer; --optional
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
print_delays	(Optional) Print delay values flag: 0 = do not print the delay values (default). 1 = print the delay values.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Print the transaction record (including delay values) of the
-- tr_id transaction.
print(tr_id, 1, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

destruct_transaction()

This blocking procedure removes a transaction record for cleanup purposes and memory management that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by either the *create_write_transaction()* or procedure.

Prototype

```
procedure destruct_transaction
(
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a write transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_write_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Remove the transaction record for the tr_id transaction.
destruct_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

wait_on()

This blocking task waits for an event(s) on the ACLK or ARESETn signals to occur before proceeding. An optional *count* argument waits for the number of events equal to *count*.

Prototype

```
procedure wait_on
(
   phase              : in integer;
   count: in integer; --optional
   bfm_id             : in integer;
   path_id            : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if       : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

phase	Wait for: AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_NEGEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_ANYEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_0_TO_1 AXI4_CLOCK_1_TO_0 AXI4_RESET_POSEDGE AXI4_RESET_NEGEDGE AXI4_RESET_ANYEDGE AXI4_RESET_0_TO_1 AXI4_RESET_1_TO_0
count	(Optional) Wait for a number of events to occur set by *count*. (default = 1)
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
wait_on(AXI4_RESET_POSEDGE, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE, 10, bfm_index,
         axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

Chapter 9 VHDL Slave BFM

This chapter provides information about the VHDL slave BFM. The BFM has an API that contains procedures to configure the BFM and to access the “Transaction Record” on page 28 during the lifetime of the transaction.

Slave BFM Protocol Support

The AXI4-Lite slave BFM supports the AMBA AXI4 protocol with restrictions detailed in “Protocol Restrictions” on page 17.

Slave Timing and Events

For detailed timing diagrams of the protocol bus activity, refer to the relevant AMBA AXI Protocol Specification chapter, which you can use to reference details of the following slave BFM API timing and events.

The specification does not define any timescale or clock period with signal events sampled and driven at rising ACLK edges. Therefore, the slave BFM does not contain any timescale, timeunit, or timeprecision declarations with the signal setup and hold times specified in units of simulator time-steps.

Slave BFM Configuration

The slave BFM supports the full range of signals defined for the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification. The BFM has parameters that you can use to configure the widths of the address and data signals and transaction fields to configure timeout factors, setup and hold times, and so on.

You can change the address and data signals widths from their default settings by assigning them new values, usually performed in the top-level module of the test bench. These new values are then passed into the slave BFM via a parameter port list of the slave BFM component.

Table 9-1 lists the parameter names for the address and data signals, and their default values.

Note
See “Running the Qsys Tool” on page 362 for details of the Qsys Parameter Editor.

Table 9-1. Slave BFM Signal Width Parameters

Signal Width Parameter	Description
AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH	Address signal width in bits. This applies to the ARADDR and AWADDR signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 32.
AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH	Read data signal width in bits. This applies to the RDATA signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 64.
AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH	Write data signal width in bits. This applies to the WDATA signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 64.
index	Uniquely identifies a slave BFM instance. It must be set to a different value for each slave BFM in the system. Default: 0.
READ_ACCEPTANCE_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding read transactions that can be accepted by the slave BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.
WRITE_ACCEPTANCE_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding write transactions that can be accepted by the slave BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.
COMBINED_ACCEPTANCE_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding combined read and write transactions that can be accepted by the slave BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.

A slave BFM has configuration fields that you can set via the *set_config()* function to configure timeout factors, setup and hold times, and so on. You can also get the value of a configuration field via the *get_config()* procedures. Table 9-2 describes the full list of configuration fields.

Table 9-2. Slave BFM Configuration

Configuration Field	Description
Timing Variables	
AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME	The setup-time prior to the active edge of ACLK, in units of simulator time-steps for all signals.[1] Default: 0.

Table 9-2. Slave BFM Configuration (cont.)

Configuration Field	Description
AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME	The hold-time after the active edge of ACLK, in units of simulator time-steps for all signals.[1] Default: 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_ TIME_FACTOR	The maximum timeout duration for a read/write transaction in clock cycles. Default: 100000.
AXI4_CONFIG_BURST_TIMEOUT_ FACTOR	The maximum delay between the individual phases of a read/write transaction in clock cycles. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ AWVALID_ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of AWVALID to the assertion of AWREADY in clock periods (default 10000).
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ ARVALID_ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of ARVALID to the assertion of ARREADY in clock periods (default 10000).
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_RREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of RVALID to the assertion of RREADY in clock periods (default 10000).
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_BREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of BVALID to the assertion of BREADY in clock periods (default 10000).
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ ASSERTION_TO_WREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of WVALID to the assertion of WREADY in clock periods (default 10000).
Slave Attributes	
AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4	Configures the AXI4 slave BFM to be AXI4-Lite compatible. 0 = disabled (default) 1 = enabled
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR	Configures the start address map for the slave.
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR	Configures the end address map for the slave.

Table 9-2. Slave BFM Configuration (cont.)

Configuration Field	Description
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_OUTSTANDING_WR	Configures the maximum number of outstanding write requests from the master that can be processed by the slave. The slave back-pressures the master by setting the signal AWREADY=0b0 if this value is exceeded. Default = 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_OUTSTANDING_RD	Configures the maximum number of outstanding read requests from the master that can be processed by the slave. The slave back-pressures the master by setting the signal ARREADY=0b0 if this value is exceeded. Default = 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_WR_PHASE	Holds the number of outstanding write phases from the master that can be processed by the slave. Default = 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_RD_PHASE	Holds the number of outstanding read phases to the master that can be processed by the slave. Default = 0.
Error Detection	
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS	Global enable/disable of all assertion checks in the BFM. 0 = disabled 1 = enabled (default)
AXI_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION	Individual enable/disable of assertion check in the BFM. 0 = disabled 1 = enabled (default)

1. Refer to Slave Timing and Events for details of simulator time-steps.

Slave Assertions

The slave BFM performs protocol error checking via built-in assertions.

Note
The built-in BFM assertions are independent of programming language and simulator.

Assertion Configuration

By default, all built-in assertions are enabled in the slave BFM. To globally disable them in the master BFM, use the *set_config()* command as the following example illustrates.

```
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS,0,bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

Alternatively, you can disable individual built-in assertions by using a sequence of *get_config()* and *set_config()* commands on the respective assertion. For example, to disable assertion checking for the AWADDR signal changing between the AWVALID and AWREADY handshake signals, use the following sequence of commands:

```
-- Define a local bit vector to hold the value of the assertion bit vector
variable config_assert_bitvector : std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1
downto 0);

-- Get the current value of the assertion bit vector
get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION, config_assert_bitvector,
bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Assign the AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY assertion bit to 0
config_assert_bitvector(AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY) := '0';

-- Set the new value of the assertion bit vector
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION, config_assert_bitvector,
bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

Note
Do not confuse the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION bit vector with the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS global enable/disable.

To re-enable the AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY assertion, follow the above code sequence and assign the assertion within the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION bit vector to 1.

For a complete listing of assertions, refer to "AXI4-Lite Assertions" on page 375.

VHDL Slave API

This section describes the VHDL Slave API.

set_config()

This nonblocking procedure sets the configuration of the slave BFM.

Prototype

```
procedure set_config
(
 config_name   : in std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
 config_val   : in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0)|
 integer;
  bfm_id        : in integer;
  path_id       : inaxi4_path_t; --optional
  signal tr_if  : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
 );
```

Arguments

config_name	Configuration name: AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4 AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ASSERTION_TO_RREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ASSERTION_TO_BREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ASSERTION_TO_WREADY AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_OUTSTANDING_WR AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_OUTSTANDING_RD AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_WR_PHASE AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_RD_PHASE
config_val	Refer to "Slave BFM Configuration" on page 215 for description and valid values.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR, 1000, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_config()

This nonblocking procedure gets the configuration of the slave BFM.

Prototype

```
procedure get_config
(
  config_name    : in std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
  config_val    : out std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto
  0)| integer;
  bfm_id         : in integer;
  path_id        : in axi4_path_t; --optional
  signal tr_if   : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

config_name — Configuration name:

AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME
AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR
AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_
ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_
ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_
ASSERTION_TO_RREADY
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_
ASSERTION_TO_BREADY
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_
ASSERTION_TO_WREADY
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_OUTSTANDING_WR
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_OUTSTANDING_RD
AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_WR_PHASE
AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_RD_PHASE

config_val — Refer to "Slave BFM Configuration" on page 215 for description and valid values.

bfm_id — BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

path_id — (Optional) Parallel process path identifier:

AXI4_PATH_0
AXI4_PATH_1
AXI4_PATH_2
AXI4_PATH_3
AXI4_PATH_4

Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

tr_if — Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns config_val

Example

```
get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR, config_value,
     bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

create_slave_transaction()

This nonblocking procedure creates a slave transaction. All transaction fields default to legal protocol values, unless previously assigned a value. It returns the *transaction_id* argument.

Prototype

```
procedure create_slave_transaction
(
   transaction_id  : out integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151.

Protocol Transaction Fields

addr	Start address

prot	Protection:
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA; (default)
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

data_words	Data words.
write_strobes	Write strobes: Each strobe 0 or 1.

resp	Response:
	AXI4_OKAY;
	AXI4_SLVERR;
	AXI4_DECERR;

read_or_write	Read or write transaction flag: AXI_TRANS_READ; AXI_TRANS_WRITE

Operational Transaction Fields

gen_write_strobes	Correction of write strobes for invalid byte lanes: 0 = write_strobes passed through to protocol signals. 1 = write_strobes auto-corrected for invalid byte lanes (default).
operation_mode	Operation mode: AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING; AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING; (default)
write_data_mode	Write data mode: AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS; The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation. AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS; (default) The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*.
address_valid_delay	Address channel ARVALID/AWVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
data_valid_delay	Write data channel WVALID delay array measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0 for all elements).
write_response_valid_delay	Write data channel BVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
address_ready_delay	Address channel ARREADY/AWREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
data_ready_delay	Read data channel RREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
write_response_ready_delay	Write data channel BREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction (default = 0).
transaction_done	Transaction *done* flag for this transaction

Returns

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151.

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction
-- Returns the transaction ID (tr_id) for this created transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_3(bfm_index));
```

set_addr()

This nonblocking procedure sets the start address *addr* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_addr
(
   addr : in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0) |
   integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

addr	Start address of transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note
You do not normally use this procedure in a slave test program.

get_addr()

This nonblocking procedure gets the start address *addr* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the create_slave_transaction() procedure.

Prototype

```
get_addr
(
   addr : out std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0) |
   integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

addr	Start address of transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns addr

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the start address addr of the tr_id transaction
get_addr(addr, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_prot()

This nonblocking procedure sets the protection *prot* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_prot
(
   prot: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

prot	Protection:
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA (default);
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note

You do not normally use this procedure in a slave test program.

get_prot()

This nonblocking procedure gets the protection *prot* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_prot
(
   prot: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

prot	Protection:
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA;
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns prot

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the protection field of the tr_id transaction.
get_prot(prot, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_data_words()

This nonblocking procedure sets the read *data_words* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_data_words
(
   data_words: in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0)
   | integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_words	Data words.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the data_words field to 2 for the read data phase (beat)
-- for the tr_id transaction.
set_data_words(2, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_data_words()

This nonblocking procedure gets a *data_words* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_data_words
(
   data_words: out std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0)
   | integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_words	Data words.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns data_words

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the data_words field of the data phase (beat)
-- for the tr_id transaction.
get_data_words(data, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_write_strobes()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *write_strobes* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_write_strobes
(
   write_strobes : in std_logic_vector (AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto
   0) | integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_strobes	Write strobes array.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 123 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note
You do not normally use this procedure in a slave test program.

get_write_strobes()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *write_strobes* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_write_strobes
(
   write_strobes : out std_logic_vector (AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1
   downto 0) | integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_strobes	Write strobes array.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns write_strobes

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Get the write_strobes field of the data phase (beat)
-- for the tr_id transaction.
get_write_strobes(write_strobe, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_resp()

This nonblocking procedure sets the response *resp* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_resp
(
   resp: in std_logic_vector (AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0) |
   integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

resp	Transaction response:
	
	AXI4_OKAY = 0;
	AXI4_SLVERR = 2;
	AXI4_DECERR = 3;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the read response to AXI_OKAY for the data phase (beat)
-- for the tr_id transaction.
set_resp(AXI4_OKAY, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_resp()

This nonblocking procedure gets a response *resp* field for a transaction uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_resp
(
   resp: out std_logic_vector (AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0) |
   integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

resp	Transaction response:
	
	AXI4_OKAY = 0;
	AXI4_SLVERR = 2;
	AXI4_DECERR = 3;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns resp

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the response field of the data phase (beat)
-- of the tr_id transaction.
get_resp(read_resp, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_read_or_write()

This procedure sets the *read_or_write* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_read_or_write
(
   read_or_write: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

read_or_write	Read or write transaction:
	
	AXI4_TRANS_READ = 0
	AXI4_TRANS_WRITE = 1

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note
You do not normally use this procedure in a slave test program.

get_read_or_write()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *read_or_write* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_read_or_write
(
   read_or_write: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

read_or_write	Read or write transaction:
	
	AXI4_TRANS_READ = 0
	AXI4_TRANS_WRITE = 1

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns read_or_write

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the read_or_write field of tr_id transaction.
get_read_or_write(read_or_write, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_gen_write_strobes()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *gen_write_strobes* field for a write transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_gen_write_strobes
(
   gen_write_strobes: in integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

gen_write_strobes	Correction of write strobes for invalid byte lanes: 0 = *write_strobes* passed through to protocol signals. 1 = *write_strobes* auto-corrected for invalid byte lanes (default).
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note

You do not normally use this procedure in a slave test program.

get_gen_write_strobes()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *gen_write_strobes* field for a write transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_gen_write_strobes
(
   gen_write_strobes: out integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

gen_write_strobes	Correct write strobes flag: 0 = *write_strobes* passed through to protocol signals. 1 = *write_strobes* auto-corrected for invalid byte lanes.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns gen_write_strobes

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify the
transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the auto correction write strobes flag of the tr_id transaction.
get_gen_write_strobes(write_strobes_flag, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_operation_mode()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *operation_mode* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_operation_mode
(
   operation_mode: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

operation_mode	Operation mode:
	
	AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING;
	AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING (default);

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the operation mode to nonblocking for the tr_id transaction.
set_operation_mode(AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_operation_mode()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *operation_mode* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_operation_mode
(
   operation_mode: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

operation_mode	Operation mode:
	
	AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING;
	AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns operation_mode

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the operation mode of the tr_id transaction.
get_operation_mode(operation_mode, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_write_data_mode()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *write_data_mode* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_write_data_mode
(
   write_data_mode: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_data_mode	Write data mode: AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS; The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation. AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS; (default) The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note
You do not normally use this procedure in a slave test program.

get_write_data_mode()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *write_data_mode* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_write_data_mode
(
   write_data_mode: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_data_mode	Write data mode: AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS; The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation. AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS; (default) The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns write_data_mode

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write data mode of the tr_id transaction
get_write_data_mode(write_data_mode, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_address_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *address_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_address_valid_delay
(
   address_valid_delay: in integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

address_valid_delay	Address channel ARVALID/AWVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note

You do not normally use this procedure in a slave test program.

get_address_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *address_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_address_valid_delay
(
   address_valid_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

address_valid_delay	Address channel ARVALID/AWVALID delay in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns address_valid_delay

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the address channel delay of the tr_id transaction.
get_address_valid_delay(address_valid_delay, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_address_ready_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *address_ready_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_address_ready_delay
(
   address_ready_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

address_ready_delay	Address channel ARREADY/AWREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns address_ready_delay

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the address channel *READY delay of the tr_id transaction.
get_address_ready_delay(address_ready_delay, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_data_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *data_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_data_valid_delay
(
   data_valid_delay: in integer;

   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_valid_delay	Read data channel array to hold RVALID delays measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_write_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the read channel RVALID delay to 3 ACLK cycles for the data
-- phase (beat) of the tr_id transaction.
set_data_valid_delay(3, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_data_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *data_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_data_valid_delay
(
   data_valid_delay: out integer;

   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_valid_delay	Data channel array to hold RVALID/WVALID delays measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns data_valid_delay

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
....
-- Get the write channel WVALID delay for the data
-- phase (beat) of the tr_id transaction.
get_data_valid_delay(data_valid_delay, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_data_ready_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *data_ready_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_data_ready_delay
(
   data_ready_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_ready_delay	Data channel array to hold RREADY/WREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Get the read data channel RREADY delay for the
-- data phase (beat) of the tr_id transaction.
get_data_ready_delay(data_ready_delay, 0, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_write_response_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *write_response_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_write_response_valid_delay
(
   write_response_valid_delay: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_response_valid_delay	Write data channel BVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the write response channel BVALID delay to 3 ACLK cycles for the
-- tr_id transaction.
set_write_response_valid_delay(3, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_response_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *write_response_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure

Prototype

```
get_write_response_valid_delay
(
   write_response_valid_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_response_valid_delay	Write data channel BVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns write_response_valid_delay

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write response channel BVALID delay of the tr_id transaction.
get_write_response_valid_delay(write_response_valid_delay, tr_id,
bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_response_ready_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *write_response_ready_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_write_response_ready_delay
(
   write_response_ready_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_response_ready_delay	Write data channel BREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns write_response_ready_delay

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write response channel BREADY delay of the tr_id transaction.
get_write_response_ready_delay(write_resp_ready_delay, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_transaction_done()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *transaction_done* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_transaction_done
(
   transaction_done : in integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_done	Transaction *done* flag for this transaction
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(0, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Set the slave transaction_done flag of the tr_id transaction.
set_transaction_done(1, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_transaction_done()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *transaction_done* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_transaction_done
(
   transaction_done : out integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_done	Transaction *done* flag for this transaction
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns transaction_done

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the transaction_done flag of the tr_id transaction.
get_transaction_done(transaction_done, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

execute_read_data_phase()

This procedure executes a read data phase that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure. This phase can be blocking (default) or nonblocking, defined by the transaction record *operation_mode* field.

The *execute_read_data_phase()* sets the RVALID protocol signal at the appropriate time defined by the transaction record *data_valid_delay* field and sets the *transaction_done* field to 1 when the phase completes.

Prototype

```
procedure execute_read_data_phase
(
   transaction_id   : in integer;

   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
....
-- Execute the read data phase for the tr_id transaction.
execute_read_data_phase(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

execute_write_response_phase()

This procedure executes a write response phase that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure. This phase can be blocking (default) or nonblocking, defined by the transaction record *operation_mode* field.

It sets the BVALID protocol signal at the appropriate time defined by the transaction record *write_response_valid_delay* field. It also sets the *transaction_done* field on completion.

Prototype

```
procedure execute_write_response_phase
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_2(bfm_index));

....

-- Execute the write response phase of the tr_id transaction.
execute_write_response_phase(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_2(bfm_index));
```

get_write_addr_phase()

This blocking procedure gets a write address phase uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_addr_phase
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; -- Optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write address phase of the tr_id transaction.
get_write_addr_phase(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_read_addr_phase()

This blocking procedure gets a read address phase uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype	
	```
	procedure get_read_addr_phase
	(
	   transaction_id  : in integer;
	   bfm_id          : in integer;
	   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; -- *Optional*
	   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
	);
	```

Arguments	transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
	bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
	path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
	tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
Returns	None	

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the read address phase of the tr_id transaction.
get_read_addr_phase(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_data_phase()

This blocking procedure gets a write data phase that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_data_phase
(
   transaction_id   : in integer;

   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id           : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write data phase for the first beat of the tr_id transaction.
get_write_data_phase(tr_id, last, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_read_addr_cycle()

This blocking procedure waits until the read address channel ARVALID signal is asserted.

Prototype

```
procedure get_read_addr_cycle
(
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
// Wait for the ARVALID signal to be asserted.
bfm.get_read_addr_cycle(bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

execute_read_addr_ready()

This procedure executes a read address ready by placing the *ready* argument value onto the ARREADY signal. It will block (default) for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure execute_read_addr_ready
(
   ready : in integer;
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
non_blocking_mode	(Optional) Nonblocking mode: 0 = Nonblocking 1 = Blocking (default)
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Set the ARREADY signal to 1 and block for 1 ACLK cycle
execute_read_addr_ready(1, 1, index, AXI4_PATH_6, axi4_tr_if_6(index));
```

get_read_data_ready()

This blocking procedure returns the value of the read data channel RREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure get_read_data_ready
(
   ready : out integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

ready	The value of the RREADY signal.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns ready

Example

```
// Get the RREADY signal value
bfm.get_read_data_ready(ready, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_addr_cycle()

This blocking procedure waits until the write address channel AWVALID signal is asserted.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_addr_cycle
(
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
// Wait for the AWVALID signal to be asserted.
bfm.get_write_addr_cycle(bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

execute_write_addr_ready()

This procedure executes a write address ready by placing the *ready* argument value onto the AWREADY signal. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure execute_write_addr_ready
(
   ready : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
index	(Optional) Data phase (beat) number.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Set the AWREADY signal to 1 and block for 1 ACLK cycle
execute_write_addr_ready(1, 1, index, AXI4_PATH_5, axi4_tr_if_5(index));
```

get_write_data_cycle()

This blocking procedure waits until the write data channel WVALID signal is asserted.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_data_cycle
(
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
// Wait for the WVALID signal to be asserted.
bfm.get_write_data_cycle(bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

execute_write_data_ready()

This procedure executes a write data ready by placing the *ready* argument value onto the WREADY signal. It blocks for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure execute_write_data_ready
(
   ready : in integer;
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
non_blocking_mode	(Optional) Nonblocking mode: 0 = Nonblocking 1 = Blocking (default)
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Set the WREADY signal to 1 and block for 1 ACLK cycle
execute_write_data_ready(1, 1, index, AXI4_PATH_7, axi4_tr_if_7(index));
```

get_write_resp_ready()

This blocking procedure returns the value of the write response channel BREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It blocks for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_resp_ready
(
   ready : out integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

ready	The value of the RREADY signal.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns ready

Example

```
// Get the BREADY signal value
bfm.get_write_resp_ready(ready, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

push_transaction_id()

This nonblocking procedure pushes a transaction ID into the back of a queue. The transaction is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure. The queue is identified by the *queue_id* argument.

Prototype

```
procedure push_transaction_id
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   queue_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
queue_id	Queue identifier: AXI4_QUEUE_ID_0 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_2 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_3 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_4 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_5 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_6 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_7 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Push the transaction record into queue 1 for the tr_id transaction.
push_transaction_id(tr_id, AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

pop_transaction_id()

This nonblocking (unless queue is empty) procedure pops a transaction ID from the front of a queue. The transaction is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure. The queue is identified by the *queue_id* argument.

If the queue is empty, then it will block until an entry becomes available.

Prototype

```
procedure pop_transaction_id
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   queue_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
queue_id	Queue identifier: AXI4_QUEUE_ID_0 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_2 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_3 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_4 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_5 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_6 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Pop the transaction record from queue 1 for the tr_id transaction.
pop_transaction_id(tr_id, AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

print()

This nonblocking procedure prints a transaction record that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the create_slave_transaction() procedure.

Prototype

```
procedure print
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   print_delays : in integer; --optional
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
print_delays	(Optional) Print delay values flag: 0 = do not print the delay values (default). 1 = print the delay values.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Print the transaction record (including delay values) of the
-- tr_id transaction.
print(tr_id, 1, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

destruct_transaction()

This blocking procedure removes a transaction record for cleanup purposes and memory management, uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
procedure destruct_transaction
(
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a slave transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_slave_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Remove the transaction record for the tr_id transaction.
destruct_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

wait_on()

This blocking procedure waits for an event on the ACLK or ARESETn signals to occur before proceeding. An optional *count* argument waits for the number of events equal to *count*.

Prototype

```
procedure wait_on
(
   phase             : in integer;
   count: in integer; --optional
   bfm_id            : in integer;
   path_id           : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if      : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

phase	Wait for: AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_NEGEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_ANYEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_0_TO_1 AXI4_CLOCK_1_TO_0 AXI4_RESET_POSEDGE AXI4_RESET_NEGEDGE AXI4_RESET_ANYEDGE AXI4_RESET_0_TO_1 AXI4_RESET_1_TO_0
count	(Optional) Wait for a number of events to occur set by *count*. (default = 1)
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
wait_on(AXI_RESET_POSEDGE, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
wait_on(AXI_CLOCK_POSEDGE, 10, bfm_index,
         axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

Helper Functions

AMBA AXI protocols typically provide a start address only in a transaction, with the following addresses for each byte of a data calculated. Helper functions provide you with a simple interface to set and get actual address/data values.

get_write_addr_data()

This nonblocking procedure returns the actual address *addr* and *data* of a particular byte in a write data beat. It also returns the maximum number of bytes (*dynamic_size*) in the write data phase (beat). It is used in a slave test program as a helper procedure to store a byte of data at a particular address in the slave memory.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_addr_data
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;

   byte_index      : in integer;
   dynamic_size    : out integer;
   addr           : out std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1
   downto 0);
   data            : out std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
byte_index	Data byte number in a data phase (beat)
dynamic_size	Number of data bytes in a data phase (beat).
addr	Data byte address.
data	Write data byte.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns	dynamic_size
	addr
	data

Example

```
-- Wait for a write data phase to complete for the write_trans
-- transaction.
get_write_data_phase(write_trans, index, AXI4_PATH_1,
                        axi4_tr_if_1(index));

-- Get the address, first data byte and byte length for the
-- data phase (beat).
get_write_addr_data(write_trans, 0, byte_length, addr, data, index,
                        AXI4_PATH_1, axi4_tr_if_1(index));

-- Store the first data byte into the slave memory using the
-- slave test program do_byte_write procedure.
do_byte_write(addr, data);

-- Get the remaining bytes of the write data phase (beat)
-- and store them in the slave memory.
if byte_length > 1 then
   for j in 1 to byte_length-1 loop
      get_write_addr_data(write_trans, j, byte_length, addr, data, index,
                           AXI4_PATH_1, axi4_tr_if_1(index));
      do_byte_write(addr, data);
   end loop;
end if;
```

get_read_addr()

This nonblocking procedure returns the actual address *addr* a particular byte in a read data transaction. It also returns the maximum number of bytes (*dynamic_size*) in the read data phase (beat). It is used in a slave test program as a helper procedure to return the address of a data byte in the slave memory.

Prototype

```
procedure get_read_addr
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;

   byte_index      : in integer;
   dynamic_size    : out integer;
   addr           : out std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-
   1 downto 0);
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
byte_index	Data byte number in a data phase (beat)
dynamic_size	Number of data bytes in a data phase (beat).
addr	Data byte address.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns

dynamic_size

addr

Example

```
-- Get the byte address and number of bytes in the data phase (beat).
get_read_addr(read_trans, 0, byte_length, addr, index, AXI4_PATH_4,
                  axi4_tr_if_4(index));

-- Retrieve the first data byte from the slave memory using the
-- slave test program do_byte_read procedure.
do_byte_read(addr, data);

-- Set the first read data byte for the read_trans transaction.
set_read_data(read_trans, 0, byte_length, addr, data, index,
                  AXI4_PATH_4, axi4_tr_if_4(index));

-- Loop for the number of bytes in the data phase (beat)
-- given by the byte_length.
if byte_length > 1 then
   for j in 1 to byte_length-1 loop

      -- Get the next read data byte address.
      get_read_addr(read_trans, j, byte_length, addr, index,
                       AXI4_PATH_4, axi4_tr_if_4(index));

      -- Retrieve the next data byte from the slave memory using the
      -- slave test program do_byte_read procedure.
      do_byte_read(addr, data);

      -- Set the next read data byte for the read_trans transaction.
      set_read_data(read_trans, j, byte_length, addr, data, index,
                          AXI4_PATH_4, axi4_tr_if_4(index));
   end loop;
end if;
```

set_read_data()

This nonblocking procedure sets a read *data* byte in a read transaction prior to execution. It is used in a slave test program as a helper procedure to set the read data retrieved from the slave memory into the relevant byte of a read data phase.

Prototype

```
procedure set_read_data
(
   transaction_id   : in integer;

   byte_index       : in integer;
   dynamic_size     : in integer;
   addr            : in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1
   downto 0);
   data             : in std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
byte_index	Data byte index number of a particular data phase (beat).
dynamic_size	Maximum number of bytes in a particular data phase (beat).
addr	Read address.
data	Read data byte.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Get the byte address and number of bytes in the data phase (beat).
get_read_addr(read_trans, 0, byte_length, addr, index, AXI4_PATH_4,
                  axi4_tr_if_4(index));

-- Retrieve the first data byte from the slave memory using the
-- slave test program do_byte_read procedure.
do_byte_read(addr, data);

-- Set the first read data byte for the read_trans transaction.
set_read_data(read_trans, 0, byte_length, addr, data, index,
                  AXI4_PATH_4, axi4_tr_if_4(index));

-- Loop for the number of bytes in the data phase (beat)
-- given by the byte_length.
if byte_length > 1 then
   for j in 1 to byte_length-1 loop

      -- Get the next read data byte address.
      get_read_addr(read_trans, j, byte_length, addr, index,
                        AXI4_PATH_4, axi4_tr_if_4(index));

      -- Retrieve the next data byte from the slave memory using the
      -- slave test program do_byte_read procedure.
      do_byte_read(addr, data);

      -- Set the next read data byte for the read_trans transaction.
      set_read_data(read_trans, j, byte_length, addr, data, index,
                        AXI4_PATH_4, axi4_tr_if_4(index));
   end loop;
end if;
```

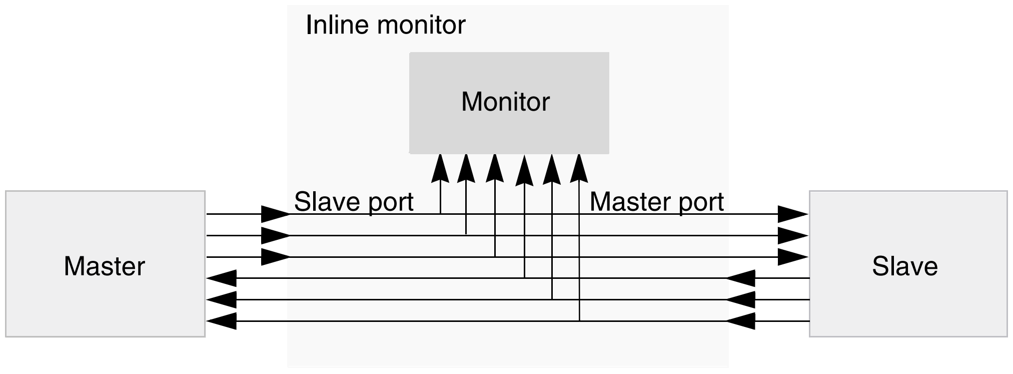
Chapter 10
VHDL Monitor BFM

This chapter provides information about the VHDL monitor BFM. Each BFM has an API containing procedures that configure the BFM and access the dynamic Transaction Record during the lifetime of a transaction.

Inline Monitor Connection

The connection of a monitor BFM to a test environment differs from that of a master and slave BFM. It is wrapped in an inline monitor interface and connected inline, between a master and slave, as shown in Figure 10-1. It has separate master and slave ports and monitors protocol traffic between a master and slave. By construction, the monitor has access to all the facilities provided by the monitor BFM.

Figure 10-1. Inline Monitor Connection Diagram



Monitor BFM Protocol Support

The AXI4-Lite monitor BFM supports the AMBA AXI4-Lite protocol with restrictions detailed in “Protocol Restrictions” on page 17.

Monitor Timing and Events

For detailed timing diagrams of the protocol bus activity and details of the following monitor BFM API timing and events, refer to the relevant AMBA AXI Protocol Specification chapter,

The AMBA AXI Protocol Specification does not define any timescale or clock period with signal events sampled and driven at rising ACLK edges. Therefore, the monitor BFM does not contain any timescale, timeunit, or timeprecision declarations with the signal setup and hold times specified in units of simulator time-steps.

Monitor BFM Configuration

The monitor BFM supports the full range of signals defined for the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification. The BFM has parameters you can use to configure the widths of the address and data signals, and transaction fields to configure timeout factors, and setup and hold times, and so on.

You can change the address and data signal widths from their default settings by assigning them new values, usually performed in the top-level module of the test bench. These new values are then passed into the monitor BFM via a parameter port list of the monitor BFM component.

Table 10-1 lists the parameter names for the address and data, and their default values..

Table 10-1. Signal Parameters

Signal Width Parameter	Description
AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH	Address signal width in bits. This applies to the ARADDR and AWADDR signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 32.
AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH	Read data signal width in bits. This applies to the RDATA signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 64.
AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH	Write data signal width in bits. This applies to the WDATA signals. Refer to the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification for more details. Default: 64.
index	Uniquely identifies a monitor BFM instance. It must be set to a different value for each monitor BFM in the system. Default: 0.
READ_ACCEPTANCE_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding read transactions that can be accepted by the monitor BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See “Running the Qsys Tool” on page 362. for details. Default: 16.
WRITE_ACCEPTANCE_ CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding write transactions that can be accepted by the monitor BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See “Running the Qsys Tool” on page 362. for details. Default: 16.

Table 10-1. Signal Parameters (cont.)

Signal Width Parameter	Description
COMBINED_ACCEPTANCE_CAPABILITY	The maximum number of outstanding combined read and write transactions that can be accepted by the monitor BFM. This parameter is set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362. for details. Default: 16.

A monitor BFM has configuration fields that you can set via the *set_config()* function to configure timeout factors, setup and hold times, and so on. You can also get the value of a configuration field via the *get_config()* function. The full list of configuration fields is described in Table 10-2.

Table 10-2. Monitor BFM Configuration

Configuration Field	Description
Timing Variables	
AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME	The setup-time prior to the active edge of ACLK, in units of simulator time-steps for all signals.[1] Default: 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME	The hold-time after the active edge of ACLK, in units of simulator time-steps for all signals.[1] Default: 0.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR	The maximum timeout duration for a read/write transaction in clock cycles. Default: 100000.
AXI4_CONFIG_BURST_TIMEOUT_FACTOR	The maximum delay between the individual phases of a read/write transaction in clock cycles. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ _ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of AWVALID to the assertion of AWREADY in clock. periods. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of ARVALID to the assertion of ARREADY in clock periods. Default:10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ASSERTION_TO_RREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of RVALID to the assertion of RREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.

Table 10-2. Monitor BFM Configuration (cont.)

Configuration Field	Description
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ASSERTION_TO_BREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of BVALID to the assertion of BREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ASSERTION_TO_WREADY	The maximum timeout duration from the assertion of WVALID to the assertion of WREADY in clock periods. Default: 10000.
Slave Attributes	
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR	Configures the start address map for the slave.
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR	Configures the end address map for the slave.
Monitor Attributes	
AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4	Configures the AXI4 monitor BFM to be AXI4-Lite compatible. 0 = disabled (default) 1 = enabled
Error Detection	
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS	Global enable/disable of all assertion checks in the BFM. 0 = disabled 1 = enabled (default)
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION	Individual enable/disable of assertion check in the BFM. 0 = disabled 1 = enabled (default)

1. Refer to Monitor Timing and Events for details of simulator time-steps.

Monitor Assertions

The monitor BFM performs protocol error checking via built-in assertions.

Note
The built-in BFM assertions are independent of programming language and simulator.

Assertion Configuration

By default, all built-in assertions are enabled in the monitor BFM. To globally disable them in the monitor BFM, use the *set_config()* command as the following example illustrates:

```
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS,0,bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

Alternatively, you can disable individual built-in assertions by using a sequence of *get_config()* and *set_config()* commands on the respective assertion. For example, to disable assertion checking for the AWADDR signal changing between the AWVALID and AWREADY handshake signals, use the following sequence of commands:

```
-- Define a local bit vector to hold the value of the assertion bit vector
variable config_assert_bitvector : std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1
downto 0);

-- Get the current value of the assertion bit vector
get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION, config_assert_bitvector,
bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Assign the AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY assertion bit to 0
config_assert_bitvector(AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY) := ‘0’;

-- Set the new value of the assertion bit vector
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION, config_assert_bitvector,
bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

Note

Do not confuse the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION bit vector with the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS global enable/disable.

To re-enable the AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY assertion, following the above code sequence, assign the assertion within the AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION bit vector to 1.

For a complete listing of assertions, refer to “AXI4-Lite Assertions” on page 375.

VHDL Monitor API

This section describes the VHDL Monitor API.

set_config()

This nonblocking procedure sets the configuration of the monitor BFM.

Prototype

```
procedure set_config
(
   config_name   : in std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
   config_val   : in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto
   0)|integer;
   bfm_id        : in integer;
   path_id       : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if  : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

config_name — **Configuration name:**

AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME
AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR
AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS
AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ASSERTION_TO_RREADY
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ASSERTION_TO_BREADY
AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ASSERTION_TO_WREADY
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR
AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR

config_val — Refer to "Monitor BFM Configuration" on page 284 for description and valid values.

bfm_id — BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

path_id — (Optional) Parallel process path identifier:

AXI4_PATH_0
AXI4_PATH_1
AXI4_PATH_2
AXI4_PATH_3
AXI4_PATH_4

Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

tr_if — Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
set_config(AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR, 1000, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_config()

This nonblocking procedure gets the configuration of the monitor BFM.

Prototype

```
procedure get_config
(
   config_name   : in std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
   config_val    : out std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1
   downto 0)|integer;
   bfm_id        : in integer;
   path_id       : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if  : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

config_name	Configuration name: AXI4_CONFIG_SETUP_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_HOLD_TIME AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR AXI4_CONFIG_AXI4LITE_axi4 AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ALL_ASSERTIONS AXI4_CONFIG_ENABLE_ASSERTION AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_AWVALID_ASSERTION_TO_AWREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_ARVALID_ASSERTION_TO_ARREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_RVALID_ASSERTION_TO_RREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_BVALID_ASSERTION_TO_BREADY AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_LATENCY_WVALID_ASSERTION_TO_WREADY AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_START_ADDR AXI4_CONFIG_SLAVE_END_ADDR
config_val	Refer to "Monitor BFM Configuration" on page 284 for description and valid values.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns config_val

Example

```
get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_MAX_TRANSACTION_TIME_FACTOR, config_value,
    bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

create_monitor_transaction()

This nonblocking procedure creates a monitor transaction. All transaction fields default to legal protocol values, unless previously assigned a value. It returns with the *transaction_id* argument.

Prototype

```
procedure create_monitor_transaction
(
   transaction_id   : out integer;
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Transaction Fields

addr	Start address

prot	Protection:
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA; (default)
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

data_words	Data words.
write_strobes	Write strobes array: Each element 0 or 1.

resp	Response:
	AXI4_OKAY;
	AXI4_SLVERR;
	AXI4_DECERR;

read_or_write	Read or write transaction flag: AXI_TRANS_READ; AXI_TRANS_WRITE

Operational Transaction Fields	gen_write_strobes	Correction of write strobes for invalid byte lanes: 0 = write_strobes passed through to protocol signals. 1 = write_strobes auto-corrected for invalid byte lanes (default).

	operation_mode	Operation mode:
		AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING;
		AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING (default);

	write_data_mode	Write data mode: AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS; The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation. AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS; (default) The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*.
	address_valid_delay	Address channel ARVALID/AWVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0.
	data_valid_delay	Data channel RVALID/WVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0.
	write_response_valid_delay	Write response channel BVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0).
	address_ready_delay	Address channel ARREADY/AWREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0.
	data_ready_delay	Data channel RREADY/WREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0.
	write_response_ready_delay	Write data channel BREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0.
	transaction_done	Transaction *done* flag for this transaction
Returns	transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151.

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction
-- Returns the transaction ID (tr_id) for this created transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index,axi4_tr_if_3(bfm_index));
```

set_addr()

This nonblocking procedure sets the start address *addr* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_addr
(
   addr : in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0) |
   integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

addr	Start address of transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note
You do not normally use this procedure in a monitor test program.

get_addr()

This nonblocking procedure gets the start address *addr* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_addr
(
   addr : out std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0) |
   integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments	addr	Start address of transaction.
	transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
	bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
	path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
	tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
Returns	addr	Start address of transaction.

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the start address addr of the tr_id transaction
get_addr(addr, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_prot()

This nonblocking procedure sets the protection *prot* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_prot
(
   prot: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

prot	Burst protection:
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA (default);
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note
You do not normally use this procedure in a monitor test program.

get_prot()

This nonblocking procedure gets the protection *prot* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_prot
(
   prot: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

prot	Burst protection:
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_DATA;
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_DATA;
	AXI4_NORM_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_SEC_INST;
	AXI4_NORM_NONSEC_INST;
	AXI4_PRIV_NONSEC_INST;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns prot

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the protection field of the tr_id transaction.
get_prot(prot, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_data_words()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *data_words* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_data_words
(
   data_words: in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0)
   | integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_words	Data words.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note
You do not normally use this procedure in a monitor test program.

get_data_words()

This nonblocking procedure gets a *data_words* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transactionid* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_data_words
(
   data_words: out std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0)
   | integer;

   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_words	Data words.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns data_words

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the data_words field of the data phase (beat)
-- for the tr_id transaction.
get_data_words(data, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_write_strobes()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *write_strobes* field array elements for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure and uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field.

Prototype

```
set_write_strobes
(
   write_strobes : in std_logic_vector (AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto
   0) | integer;

   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_strobes	Write strobes.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note
You do not normally use this procedure in a monitor test program.

get_write_strobes()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *write_strobes* field array elements for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_write_strobes
(
   write_strobes : out std_logic_vector (AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1
   downto 0) | integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_strobes	Write strobes array.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns write_strobes

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Get the write_strobes field of the data phase (beat)
-- for the tr_id transaction.
get_write_strobes(write_strobe, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_resp()

This nonblocking procedure sets the response *resp* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_resp
(
   resp: in std_logic_vector (AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0) |
   integer;

   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

resp	Transaction response:
	
	AXI4_OKAY = 0;
	AXI4_SLVERR = 2;
	AXI4_DECERR = 3;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note

You do not normally use this procedure in a monitor test program.

get_resp()

This nonblocking procedure gets a response *resp* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_resp
(
   resp: out std_logic_vector (AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0) |
   integer;

   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

resp	Transaction response:
	
	AXI4_OKAY = 0;
	AXI4_SLVERR = 2;
	AXI4_DECERR = 3;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns resp

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the response field of the data phase (beat)
-- of the tr_id transaction.
get_resp(read_resp, tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_read_or_write()

This procedure sets the *read_or_write* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the create_monitor_transaction() procedure.

Prototype

```
set_read_or_write
(
   read_or_write: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

read_or_write — Read or write transaction:

AXI4_TRANS_READ = 0
AXI4_TRANS_WRITE = 1

transaction_id — Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

bfm_id — BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

path_id — (Optional) Parallel process path identifier:

AXI4_PATH_0
AXI4_PATH_1
AXI4_PATH_2
AXI4_PATH_3
AXI4_PATH_4

Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

tr_if — Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note
You do not normally use this procedure in a monitor test program.

get_read_or_write()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *read_or_write* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_read_or_write
(
   read_or_write: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

read_or_write	Read or write transaction:
	
	AXI4_TRANS_READ = 0
	AXI4_TRANS_WRITE = 1

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns read_or_write

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the read_or_write field of tr_id transaction.
get_read_or_write(read_or_write, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_gen_write_strobes()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *gen_write_strobes* field for a write transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_gen_write_strobes
(
   gen_write_strobes: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

gen_write_strobes	Correction of write strobes for invalid byte lanes: 0 = *write_strobes* passed through to protocol signals. 1 = *write_strobes* auto-corrected for invalid byte lanes (default).
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note
You do not normally use this procedure in a monitor test program.

get_gen_write_strobes()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *gen_write_strobes* field for a write transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_gen_write_strobes
(
   gen_write_strobes: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

gen_write_strobes	Correct write strobes flag: 0 = *write_strobes* passed through to protocol signals. 1 = *write_strobes* auto-corrected for invalid byte lanes.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns gen_write_strobes

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify the
transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the auto correction write strobes flag of the tr_id transaction.
get_gen_write_strobes(write_strobes_flag, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_operation_mode()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *operation_mode* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_operation_mode
(
   operation_mode: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

operation_mode	Operation mode:
	
	AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING;
	AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING (default);

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Set the operation mode to nonblocking for the tr_id transaction.
set_operation_mode(AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_operation_mode()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *operation_mode* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_operation_mode
(
   operation_mode: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

operation_mode	Operation mode:
	
	AXI4_TRANSACTION_NON_BLOCKING;
	AXI4_TRANSACTION_BLOCKING;

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns operation_mode

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the operation mode of the tr_id transaction.
get_operation_mode(operation_mode, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_write_data_mode()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *write_data_mode* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_write_data_mode
(
   write_data_mode: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_data_mode	Write data mode: AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS; The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation. AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS; (default) The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note

You do not normally use this procedure in a monitor test program.

get_write_data_mode()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *write_data_mode* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure

Prototype

```
get_write_data_mode
(
   write_data_mode: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_data_mode	Write data mode: AXI4_DATA_AFTER_ADDRESS; The master first drives the address phase and, after it completes, it drives the corresponding data phases. The master waits for AWREADY before asserting WVALID. For a slave designed to wait for WVALID before asserting AWREADY, using this mode may cause a deadlock situation. This mode will force the data transfer to start after the address transfer completes; however, it is recommended that you use the **_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS along with a *data_valid_delay* setting instead to avoid the possible deadlock situation. AXI4_DATA_WITH_ADDRESS; (default) The master drives the address and the data phase in a nonblocking process; it asserts AWVALID and then asserts WVALID depending on *data_valid_delay*. If *data_valid_delay* is set to 0, then AWVALID and WVALID are asserted at the same time; otherwise, WVALID is asserted after *data_valid_delay*.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns write_data_mode

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write data mode of the tr_id transaction
get_write_data_mode(write_data_mode, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_address_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *address_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_address_valid_delay
(
   address_valid_delay: in integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

address_valid_delay	Address channel ARVALID/AWVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note

You do not normally use this procedure in a monitor test program.

get_address_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *address_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_address_valid_delay
(
   address_valid_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

address_valid_delay	Address channel ARVALID/AWVALID delay in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns address_valid_delay

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the address channel delay of the tr_id transaction.
get_address_valid_delay(address_valid_delay, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_address_ready_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *address_ready_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_address_ready_delay
(
   address_ready_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

address_ready_delay	Address channel ARREADY/AWREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns address_ready_delay

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the address channel *READY delay of the tr_id transaction.
get_address_ready_delay(address_ready_delay, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_data_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *data_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
set_data_valid_delay
(
   data_valid_delay: in integer;

   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_valid_delay	Data channel array to hold RVALID/WVALID delays measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction. Default: 0.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note
You do not normally use this procedure in a monitor test program.

get_data_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *data_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_data_valid_delay
(
   data_valid_delay: out integer;

   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_valid_delay	Data channel array to hold RVALID/WVALID delays measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns data_valid_delay

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction with start address of 0.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
....
-- Get the write channel WVALID delay for the data
-- phase (beat) of the tr_id transaction.
get_data_valid_delay(data_valid_delay, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_data_ready_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *data_ready_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_data_ready_delay
(
   data_ready_delay: out integer;

   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

data_ready_delay	Data channel array to hold RREADY/WREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

-- Get the read data channel RREADY delay for the
-- data phase (beat) of the tr_id transaction.
get_data_ready_delay(data_ready_delay, 0, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_response_valid_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *write_response_valid_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_write_response_valid_delay
(
   write_response_valid_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_response_valid_delay	Write data channel BVALID delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns write_response_valid_delay

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write response channel BVALID delay of the tr_id transaction.
get_write_response_valid_delay(write_response_valid_delay, tr_id,
bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_response_ready_delay()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *write_response_ready_delay* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_write_response_ready_delay
(
   write_response_ready_delay: out integer;
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

write_response_ready_delay	Write data channel BREADY delay measured in ACLK cycles for this transaction.
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns write_response_ready_delay

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write response channel BREADY delay of the tr_id transaction.
get_write_response_ready_delay(write_resp_ready_delay, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

set_transaction_done()

This nonblocking procedure sets the *transaction_done* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedures.

Prototype

```
set_transaction_done
(
   transaction_done : in integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_done	Transaction *done* flag for this transaction
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Note
You do not normally use this procedure in a monitor test program.

get_transaction_done()

This nonblocking procedure gets the *transaction_done* field for a transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* field previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
get_transaction_done
(
   transaction_done : out integer;
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id : in integer;
   path_id : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_done	Transaction *done* flag for this transaction
transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns transaction_done

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the transaction_done flag of the tr_id transaction.
get_transaction_done(transaction_done, tr_id, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_read_data_phase()

This blocking procedure gets a read data phase that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

The *get_read_data_phase()* sets the *transaction_done* field to 1 to indicate the whole read transaction has completed.

Prototype

```
procedure get_read_data_phase
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the read data phase of the tr_id transaction.
get_read_data_phase(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_response_phase()

This blocking procedure gets a write response phase that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

It sets the *transaction_done* field to 1 when the phase completes to indicate the whole transaction has completed.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_response_phase
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction.
-- Creation returns tr_id to identify the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write response phase for the tr_id transaction.
get_write_response_phase(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_addr_phase()

This blocking procedure gets a write address phase that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_addr_phase
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; -- Optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write address phase of the tr_id transaction.
get_write_addr_phase(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_read_addr_phase()

This blocking procedure gets a read address phase that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
procedure get_read_addr_phase
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; -- Optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the read address phase of the tr_id transaction.
get_read_addr_phase(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_data_phase()

This blocking procedure gets a write data phase that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_data_phase
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;

   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the write data phase for the first beat of the tr_id transaction.
get_write_data_phase(tr_id, last, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_rw_transaction()

This blocking procedure gets a complete read/write transaction that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
procedure get_rw_transaction
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Get the complete tr_id transaction.
get_rw_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_read_addr_ready()

This blocking procedure returns the value of the read address channel ARREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure get_read_addr_ready
(
   ready : out integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

ready	The value of the ARREADY signal.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns ready

Example

```
// Get the ARREADY signal value
bfm.get_read_addr_ready(ready, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_read_data_ready()

This blocking procedure returns the value of the read data channel RREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure get_read_data_ready
(
   ready : out integer;
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

ready	The value of the RREADY signal.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns ready

Example

```
// Get the RREADY signal value
bfm.get_read_data_ready(ready, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_addr_ready()

This blocking procedure returns the value of the write address channel AWREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_addr_ready
(
   ready : out integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

ready	The value of the AWREADY signal.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns ready

Example

```
// Get the WREADY signal value
bfm.get_write_addr_ready(ready, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_data_ready()

This blocking procedure returns the value of the write data channel WREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It will block for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_data_ready
(
   ready : out integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

ready	The value of the WREADY signal.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns ready

Example

```
// Get the WREADY signal value
bfm.get_write_data_ready(ready, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

get_write_resp_ready()

This blocking procedure returns the value of the write response channel BREADY signal using the *ready* argument. It blocks for one ACLK period.

Prototype

```
procedure get_write_resp_ready
(
   ready : out integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_adv_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

ready	The value of the RREADY signal.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_5 AXI4_PATH_6 AXI4_PATH_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns ready

Example

```
// Get the BREADY signal value
bfm.get_write_resp_ready(ready, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

push_transaction_id()

This nonblocking procedure pushes a transaction record into the back of a queue. The transaction is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure. The queue is identified by the *queue_id* argument.

Prototype

```
procedure push_transaction_id
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   queue_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
queue_id	Queue identifier: AXI4_QUEUE_ID_0 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_2 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_3 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_4 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_5 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_6 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Push the transaction record into queue 1 for the tr_id transaction.
push_transaction_id(tr_id, AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

pop_transaction_id()

This nonblocking (unless queue is empty) procedure pops a transaction record from the front of a queue. The transaction is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *get_rw_transaction()* procedure. The queue is identified by the *queue_id* argument.

If the queue is empty, then it will block until an entry becomes available.

Prototype

```
procedure pop_transaction_id
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   queue_id  : in integer;
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
queue_id	Queue identifier: AXI4_QUEUE_ID_0 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_2 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_3 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_4 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_5 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_6 AXI4_QUEUE_ID_7 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Pop the transaction record from queue 1 for the tr_id transaction.
pop_transaction_id(tr_id, AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1, bfm_index,
axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

print()

This nonblocking procedure prints a transaction record, that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
procedure print
(
   transaction_id  : in integer;
   print_delays : in integer; --optional
   bfm_id          : in integer;
   path_id         : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if    : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
print_delays	(Optional) Print delay values flag: 0 = do not print the delay values (default). 1 = print the delay values.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Print the transaction record (including delay values) of the
-- tr_id transaction.
print(tr_id, 1, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

destruct_transaction()

This blocking procedure removes a transaction record, for cleanup purposes and memory management, that is uniquely identified by the *transaction_id* argument previously created by the *create_monitor_transaction()* procedure.

Prototype

```
procedure destruct_transaction
(
   transaction_id   : in integer;
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

transaction_id	Transaction identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
-- Create a monitor transaction. Creation returns tr_id to identify
-- the transaction.
create_monitor_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));

....

-- Remove the transaction record for the tr_id transaction.
destruct_transaction(tr_id, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

wait_on()

This blocking procedure waits for an event on the ACLK or ARESETn signals to occur before proceeding. An optional *count* argument waits for the number of events equal to *count.*

Prototype

```
procedure wait_on
(
   phase            : in integer;
   count: in integer; --optional
   bfm_id           : in integer;
   path_id          : in axi4_path_t; --optional
   signal tr_if     : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t
);
```

Arguments

phase	Wait for: AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_NEGEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_ANYEDGE AXI4_CLOCK_0_TO_1 AXI4_CLOCK_1_TO_0 AXI4_RESET_POSEDGE AXI4_RESET_NEGEDGE AXI4_RESET_ANYEDGE AXI4_RESET_0_TO_1 AXI4_RESET_1_TO_0
count	(Optional) Wait for a number of events to occur set by *count*. (default = 1)
bfm_id	BFM identifier. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
path_id	(Optional) Parallel process path identifier: AXI4_PATH_0 AXI4_PATH_1 AXI4_PATH_2 AXI4_PATH_3 AXI4_PATH_4 Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.
tr_if	Transaction signal interface. Refer to “Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments” on page 151 for more details.

Returns None

Example

```
wait_on(AXI4_RESET_POSEDGE, bfm_index, axi4_tr_if_0(bfm_index));
wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE, 10, bfm_index,
         axi4tr_if_0(bfm_index));
```

Chapter 11
VHDL Tutorials

This chapter discusses how to use the Mentor Verification IP Altera Edition master and slave BFMs to verify slave and master components, respectively.

In the Verifying a Slave DUT tutorial, the slave is an on-chip RAM model that is verified using a master BFM and test program. In the Verifying a Master DUT tutorial, the master issues simple write and read transactions that are verified using a slave BFM and test program.

Following this top-level discussion of how you verify a master and a slave component using the Mentor Verification IP Altera Edition is a brief example of how to run Qsys, the powerful system integration tool in the Quartus II software. This procedure shows you how to use Qsys to create a top-level DUT environment. For more details on this example, refer to "Getting Started with Qsys and the BFMs" on page 359.

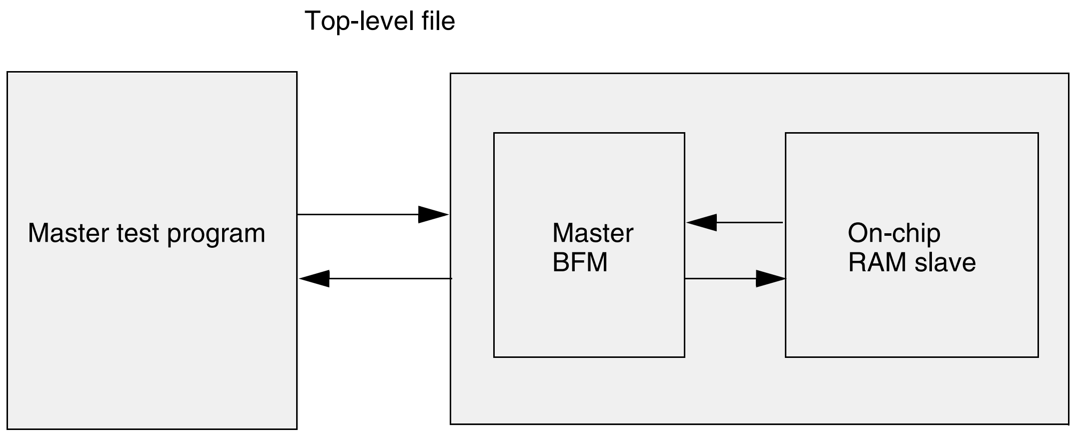
Note

Parameters to configure any optional signals, master BFM transaction issuing, and slave BFM acceptance capability, are set with the Qsys Parameter Editor. See "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362 for details of the Qsys Parameter Editor.

Verifying a Slave DUT

A slave DUT component is connected to a master BFM at the signal-level. A master test program, written at the transaction-level, generates stimulus via the master BFM to verify the slave DUT. Figure 11-1 illustrates a typical top-level test bench environment.

Figure 11-1. Slave DUT Top-Level Test Bench Environment



In this example, the master test program also compares the written data with that read back from the slave DUT, reporting the result of the comparison.

A top-level file instantiates and connects all the components required to test and monitor the DUT, and controls the system clock (ACLK) and reset (ARESETn) signals.

BFM Master Test Program

A master test program using the master BFM API is capable of creating a wide range of stimulus scenarios to verify a slave DUT. However, this tutorial restricts the master BFM stimulus to write transactions followed by read transactions to the same address, and then compares the read data with the previously written data.

Note

For a complete code example of this master test program, refer to the installed Mentor Verification IP Altera Edition kit in the following directory:
<install_dir>\mentor_vip_ae\axi4lite\qsys-examples\ex1_back_to_back_vhd\master_test_program.vhd

The master test program contains the following:

- A create_transactions process that creates and executes read and write transactions.
- Processes *handle_write_resp_ready* and *handle_read_data_ready* to handle the write response channel BREADY and read data channel RREADY signals, respectively.
- Variables *m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay* and *m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay* to set the delay of the BREADY and RREADY signals.

The following sections describe the main processes and variables:

m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay

The *m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay* variable holds the BREADY signal delay. The delay value extends the length of the write response phase by a number of ACLK cycles.

Example 11-1 below shows the AWREADY signal delayed by two ACLK cycles. You can edit this variable to change the AWREADY signal delay.

Example 11-1. m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay

```
-- Variable : m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay
signal m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay :integer := 2;
```

m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay

The *m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay* variable holds the RREADY signal delay. The delay value extends the length of each read data phase (beat) by a number of ACLK cycles.

Example 11-2 below shows the RREADY signal delayed by two ACLK cycles. You can edit this variable to change the RREADY signal delay.

Example 11-2. m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay

```
-- Variable : m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay
signal m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay : integer := 2;
```

Configuration and Initialization

The master test process creates and executes read and write transactions. The whole process runs concurrently with other processes in the test program, using the *path_id* = *AXI4_PATH_0*. See "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for details of *path_id*.

The process waits for the ARESETn signal to be deasserted, followed by a positive ACLK edge, as shown in Example 11-3. This satisfies the protocol requirements in Section A3.1.2 of the AXI Protocol Specification.

Example 11-3. Configuration and Initialization

```
-- Master test
process
   variable tr_id: integer;
   variable data_words :  std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0);
   variable lp: line;
   begin
      wait_on(AXI4_RESET_0_TO_1, index, axi4_tr_if_0(index));
      wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE, index, axi4_tr_if_0(index));
```

Create and Execute Write Transactions

To generate AXI4-Lite protocol traffic, the master test program must create a transaction before executing it. The code shown in Example 11-4 calls the *create_write_transaction()* procedure, providing only the start address argument of the transaction.

This example has an AXI4-Lite write data bus width of 32 bits; therefore, a single beat of data conveys 4 bytes across the data bus. The call to the *set_data_words()* procedure sets the first element of the *data_words* transaction field with the value 1 on byte lane 1, with a result of *x"0000_0100"*. However, the AXI4-Lite protocol permits narrow transfers with the use of the write strobes signal WSTRB to indicate which byte lane contains valid write data, and therefore indicates to the slave DUT which data byte lane will be written into memory. The write strobes WSTRB signal indicates to the slave which byte lane contains valid write data to be written to the slave memory. Similarly, you can call the *set_write_strobes()* procedure to set the first element of the *write_strobes* transaction field with the value 2, indicating that only byte lane 1 contains valid data. Calling the *execute_transaction()* procedure executes the transaction on the protocol signals.

All other transaction fields default to legal protocol values (see *create_write_transaction()* procedure for details).

Example 11-4. Create and Execute Write Transactions

```
        -- 4 x Writes
        -- Write data value 1 on byte lanes 1 to address 1.
        create_write_transaction(1, tr_id, index, axi4_tr_if_0(index));
        data_words(31 downto 0) := x"00000100";
        set_data_words(data_words, tr_id, index, axi4_tr_if_0(index));
set_write_strobes(2, tr_id, index, axi4_tr_if_0(index));
        report "master_test_program: Writing data (1) to address (1)";

        -- By default it will run in Blocking mode
        execute_transaction(tr_id, index, axi4_tr_if_0(index));
```

In the complete master test program, three subsequent write transactions are created and executed in a similar manner to Example 11-4.

Create and Execute Read Transactions

The code excerpt in Example 11-5 reads the data that has been previously written into the slave memory. The master test program first creates a read transaction by calling the *create_read_transaction()* procedure, providing only the start address argument.

The read transaction is then executed on the protocol signals by calling the *execute_transaction()* procedure.

The read data is obtained using the *get_data_words()* procedure to get the *data_words* transaction field value. The result of the read data is compared with the expected data, and a message displays the transcript.

Example 11-5. Create and Execute Read Transactions

```
--4 x Reads
--Read data from address 1.
create_read_transaction(1, tr_id, index, axi4_tr_if_0(index));
execute_transaction(tr_id, index, axi4_tr_if_0(index));

get_data_words(data_words, tr_id, index, axi4_tr_if_0(index));
if(data_words(31 downto 0) = x"00000100") then
   report "master_test_program: Read correct data (1) at address (1)";
else
   hwrite(lp, data_words(31 downto 0));
   report "master_test_program: Error: Expected data (1) at address 1, but
got " & lp.all;
end if;
```

In the complete master test program, three subsequent read transactions are created and executed in a similar manner to Example 11-5.

handle_write_resp_ready

The *handle write response ready* process handles the BREADY signal for the write response channel. The whole process runs concurrently with other processes in the test program, using the *path_id = AXI4_PATH_5*. See "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for details of *path_id*, as shown in the Example 11-6.

The initial wait for the ARESETn signal to be deactivated, followed by a positive ACLK edge, satisfies the protocol requirement detailed in Section A3.1.2 of the AXI Protocol Specification.

The BREADY signal is deasserted using the nonblocking call to the *execute_write_resp_ready()* procedure and waits for a write channel response phase to occur with a call to the blocking *get_write_response_cycle()* procedure. A received write response phase indicates that the BVALID signal has been asserted, triggering the starting point for the delay of the BREADY signal. In a *loop* it delays the assertion of BREADY based on the setting of the *m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay* variable. After the delay, another call to the *execute_write_resp_ready()* procedure to assert the BREADY signal completes the BREADY handling.

Example 11-6. Process handle_write_resp_ready

```
-- handle_write_resp_ready : write response ready through path 5.
-- This method assert/de-assert the write response channel ready signal.
-- Assertion and de-assertion is done based on following variable's value:
-- m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay
process
   variable tmp_ready_delay : integer;
begin
   wait_on(AXI4_RESET_0_TO_1, index, AXI4_PATH_5, axi4_tr_if_5(index));
   wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE, index, AXI4_PATH_5, axi4_tr_if_5(index));
   loop
      wait until m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay > 0;
      tmp_ready_delay := m_wr_resp_phase_ready_delay;
      execute_write_resp_ready(0, 1, index, AXI4_PATH_5,
axi4_tr_if_5(index));
      get_write_response_cycle(index, AXI4_PATH_5, axi4_tr_if_5(index));
      if(tmp_ready_delay > 1) then
         for i in  0 to tmp_ready_delay-2 loop
            wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE, index, AXI4_PATH_5,
axi4_tr_if_5(index));
         end loop;
      end if;
      execute_write_resp_ready(1, 1, index, AXI4_PATH_5,
axi4_tr_if_5(index));
   end loop;
   wait;
end process;
```

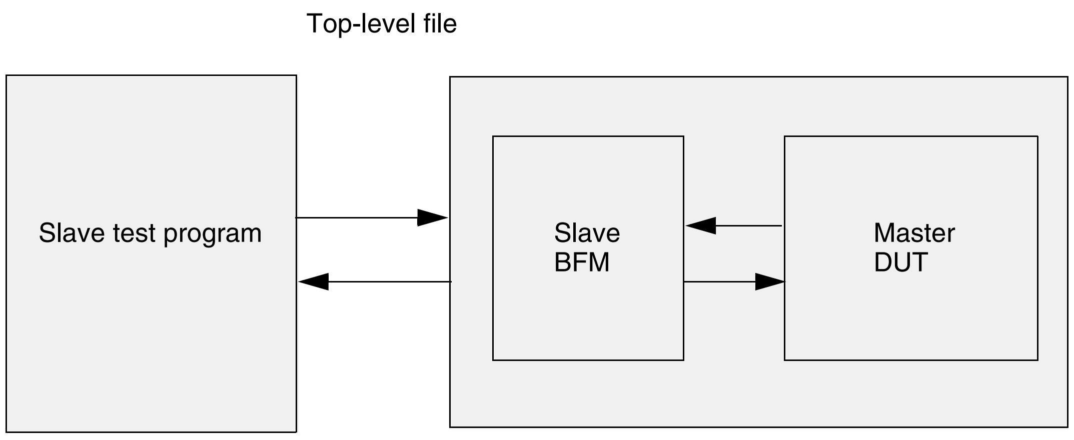
handle_read_data_ready

The *handle read data ready* process handles the RREADY signal for the read data channel. It delays the assertion of the RREADY signal based on the setting of the *m_rd_data_phase_ready_delay* variable. The whole process runs concurrently with other processes in the test program, using the *path_id* = *AXI4_PATH_6*. See "Overloaded Procedure Common Arguments" on page 151 for details of *path_id*, and is similar in operation to the *handle_write_resp_ready* procedure.

Verifying a Master DUT

A master DUT component is connected to a slave BFM at the signal-level. A slave test program, written at the transaction-level, generates stimulus via the slave BFM to verify the master DUT. Figure 11-2 illustrates a typical top-level test bench environment.

Figure 11-2. Master DUT Top-Level Test Bench Environment



In this example, the slave test program is a simple memory model.

A top-level file instantiates and connects all the components required to test and monitor the DUT, and controls the system clock (ACLK) and reset (ARESETn) signals.

BFM Slave Test Program

The slave test program is a memory model that contains two APIs:

- Basic Slave API Definition

  The Basic Slave API Definition allows you to create a wide range of stimulus scenarios to test a master DUT. This API definition simplifies the creation of slave stimulus based on the default response of OKAY to master read and write transactions.

- Advanced Slave API Definition.

  The Advanced Slave API Definition allows you to create additional response scenarios to transactions.

Note

For a complete code example of this slave test program, refer to the installed Mentor Verification IP Altera Edition kit in the following directory:
<install_dir>\mentor_vip_ae\axi4lite\qsys-examples\ex1_back_to_back_vhd\slave_test_program.vhd

Basic Slave API Definition

The Basic Slave Test Program API contains the following elements:

- Procedures *m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay* and *do_byte_write()* that read and write a byte of data to Internal Memory, respectively.
- Procedures *set_read_data_valid_delay()* and *set_wr_resp_valid_delay()* to configure the delay of the read data channel RVALID, and write response channel BVALID signals, respectively.
- Variables *m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay* and *m_rd_addr_phase_ready_delay* to configure the delay of the read/write address channel AWVALID/ARVALID signals, and *m_wr_data_phase_ready_delay* to configure the delay of the write response channel BVALID signal.

Internal Memory

The internal memory for the slave is defined as an array of 8 bits, so that each byte of data is stored as an address/data pair.

Example 11-7. Internal Memory

```
type memory_t is array (0 to 2**16-1) of std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
shared variable mem : memory_t;
```

do_byte_read()

The *do_byte_read()* procedure reads a *data* byte from the Internal Memory *mem* given an address location *addr*, as shown below.

You can edit this procedure to modify the way the read data is extracted from the internal memory.

```
-- Procedure : do_byte_read
-- Procedure to provide read data byte from memory at particular input
-- address
procedure do_byte_read(addr : in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1
downto 0); data : out std_logic_vector(7 downto 0)) is
begin
   data := mem(to_integer(addr));
end do_byte_read;
```

do_byte_write()

The *do_byte_write()* procedure when called writes a *data* byte to the Internal Memory *mem* given an address location *addr*, as shown below.

You can edit this procedure to modify the way the write data is stored in the internal memory.

```
-- Procedure : do_byte_write
-- Procedure to write data byte to memory at particular input address
procedure do_byte_write(addr : in std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1
downto 0);  data : in std_logic_vector(7 downto 0)) is
begin
   mem(to_integer(addr)) := data;
end do_byte_write;
```

m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay

The *m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay* variable holds the AWREADY signal delay. The delay value extends the length of the write address phase by a number of ACLK cycles. The starting point of the delay is determined by the assertion of the AWVALID signal.

Example 11-8 shows the AWREADY signal delayed by two ACLK cycles. You can edit this variable to change the AWREADY signal delay.

Example 11-8. m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay

```
-- Variable : m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay
signal m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay : integer := 2;
```

m_rd_addr_phase_ready_delay

The *m_rd_addr_phase_ready_delay* variable holds the ARREADY signal delay. The delay value extends the length of the read address phase by a number of ACLK cycles. The starting point of the delay is determined by the assertion of the ARVALID signal.

Example 11-9 shows the ARREADY signal delayed by two ACLK cycles. You can edit this variable to change the ARREADY signal delay.

Example 11-9. m_rd_addr_phase_ready_delay

```
-- Variable : m_rd_addr_phase_ready_delay
signal m_rd_addr_phase_ready_delay : integer := 2;
```

m_wr_data_phase_ready_delay

The *m_wr_data_phase_ready_delay* variable holds the WREADY signal delay. The delay value extends the length of each write data phase (beat) by a number of ACLK cycles. The starting point of the delay is determined by the assertion of the WVALID signal.

Example 11-10 shows the WREADY signal delayed by two ACLK cycles. You can edit this function to change the WREADY signal delay.

Example 11-10. m_wr_data_phase_ready_delay

```
-- Variable : m_wr_data_phase_ready_delay
signal m_wr_data_phase_ready_delay : integer := 2;
```

set_wr_resp_valid_delay()

The *set_wr_resp_valid_delay()* procedure has two prototypes (*path_id* is optional), and configures the BVALID signal to be delayed by a number of ACLK cycles with the effect of delaying the start of the write response phase. The delay value of the BVALID signal is stored in the *write_response_valid_delay* transaction field.

Example 11-11 shows the BVALID signal delay set to two ACLK cycles. You can edit this function to change the BVALID signal delay.

Example 11-11. set_wr_resp_valid_delay()

```
-- Procedure : set_wr_resp_valid_delay
-- This is used to set write response phase valid delay to start driving
-- write response phase after specified delay.
procedure set_wr_resp_valid_delay(id : integer; path_id : in axi4_path_t;
signal tr_if : inout axi4_vhd_if_struct_t) is
begin
   set_write_response_valid_delay(2, id, index, path_id, tr_if);
end set_wr_resp_valid_delay;
```

set_read_data_valid_delay()

The *set_read_data_valid_delay()* procedure has two prototypes (*path_id* is optional), and configures the RVALID signal to be delayed by a number of ACLK cycles with the effect of delaying the start of a read data phase (beat). The delay value of the RVALID signal is stored in the *data_valid_delay* transaction field.

The code below shows the RVALID signal delay set to two ACLK periods. You may edit this function to change the RVALID signal delay.

Example 11-12. set_read_data_valid_delay()

```
-- Procedure : set_read_data_valid_delay
  -- This will set the ready delay for write data phase
  procedure set_read_data_valid_delay(id : integer; signal tr_if : inout
axi4_vhd_if_struct_t) is
    variable burst_length : integer;
  begin
    set_data_valid_delay(2, id, index, tr_if);
  end set_read_data_valid_delay;
```

Note

In addition to the above variables and procedures, you can configure other aspects of the AXI4-Lite Slave BFM by using these procedures: *"set_config()"* on page 220 and *"get_config()"* on page 222.

Using the Basic Slave Test Program API

There is a set of variables and procedures that you can use to create stimulus scenarios based on a memory-model slave with a minimal amount of editing, as described in "Basic Slave API Definition" on page 347.

Consider the following configuration when using the slave test program.

Advanced Slave API Definition

Note

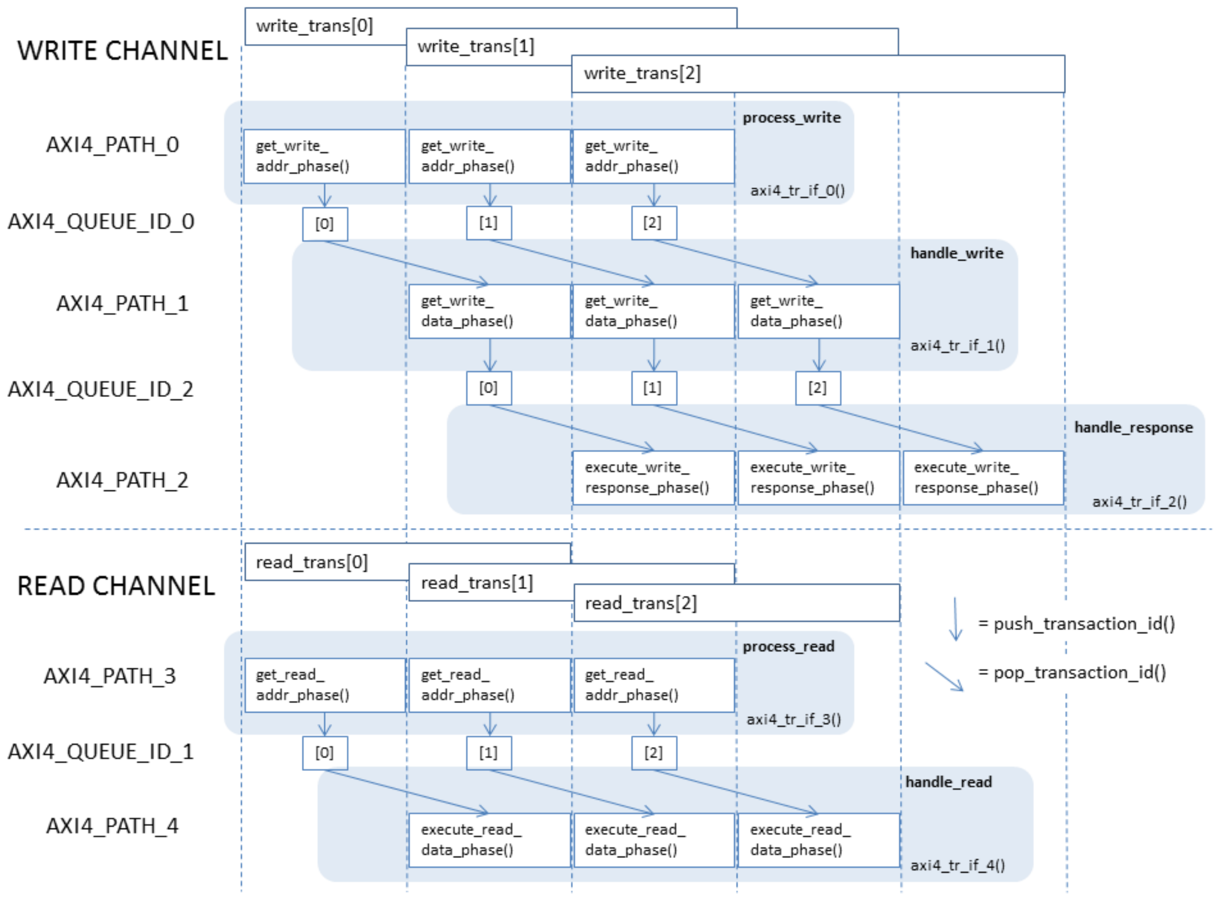
You are not required to edit the following Advance Slave API unless you require a different response than the default (OKAY) response.

The remaining section of this tutorial presents a walk-through of the Advanced Slave API in the slave test program. It consists of five main processes—*process_write*, *process_read*, *handle_write, handle_response,* and *handle_read*—in the slave test program, as shown in Figure 11-3. There are additional *handle_write_addr_ready*, *handle_read_addr_ready,* and *handle_write_data_ready* processes to handle the handshake AWREADY, ARREADY, and WREADY signals, respectively.

The Advanced Slave API is capable of handling pipelined transactions. Pipelining can occur when a transaction starts before a previous transaction has completed. Therefore, a write transaction that starts before a previous write transaction has completed can be pipelined. Figure 11-3 shows the write channel having three concurrent *write_trans* transactions, whereby the *get_write_addr_phase[2]*, *get_write_data_phase[1]* and *execute_write_response_phase[0]* are concurrently active on the write address, data and response channels, respectively.

Similarly, a read transaction that starts before a previous read transaction has completed can be pipelined. Figure 11-3 shows the read channel having two concurrent *read_trans* transactions, whereby the *get_read_addr_phase[1]* and *execute_read_data_phase[0]* are concurrently active on the read address and data channels, respectively.

Figure 11-3. Slave Test Program Advanced API Processes



process_read

The *process_read* process creates a slave transaction and receives the read address phase. It uses unique path and queue identifiers to work concurrently with other processes.

The maximum number of outstanding read transactions is configured before the processing of read transactions begins an ACLK period after the ARESETn signal is inactive, as shown in Example 11-13.

Each slave transaction has a unique *transaction_id* number associated with it that is automatically incremented for each new slave transaction created. In a *loop*, the *create_slave_transaction()* procedure call returns the *transaction_id* for the slave BFM, indexed by the *index* argument. A *read_trans* variable is previously defined to hold the *transaction_id*.

A call to the *get_read_addr_phase()* procedure blocks the code until a read address phase has completed. The call to the *push_transaction_id()* procedure pushes *read_trans* into the AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1 queue.

The *loop* completes and restarts by creating a new slave transaction and blocks for another write address phase to occur.

Example 11-13. process_read

```
-- process_read : read address phase through path 3
-- This process keep receiving read address phase and push
-- the transaction into queue through push_transaction_id API.
process
   variable read_trans: integer;
begin
   wait_on(AXI4_RESET_0_TO_1, index, AXI4_PATH_3,
            axi4_tr_if_3(index));
   wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE, index, AXI4_PATH_3,
            axi4_tr_if_3(index));
   loop
      create_slave_transaction(read_trans, index, AXI4_PATH_3,
                                 axi4_tr_if_3(index));
      get_read_addr_phase(read_trans, index, AXI4_PATH_3,
                                 axi4_tr_if_3(index));
      get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_RD_PHASE,
                  tmp_config_num_outstanding_rd_phase, index,
                  AXI4_PATH_3, axi4_tr_if_3(index));
      push_transaction_id(read_trans, AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1, index,
                        AXI4_PATH_3, axi4_tr_if_3(index));
   end loop;
   wait;
end process;
```

handle_read

The *handle_read* process gets read data from the Internal Memory as a phase (beat). It uses unique path and queue identifiers to work concurrently with other processes.

In a *loop,* the *pop_transaction_id()* procedure call returns the *transaction_id* from the queue for the slave BFM, indexed by the *index* argument, as shown in Example 11-14. A *read_trans* variable is previously defined to hold the *transaction_id*. If the queue is empty, then *pop_transaction_id()* will block until content is available.

The call to *set_read_data_valid_delay()* configures the RVALID signal delay.

In a *loop,* the call to the *get_read_addr()* helper procedure returns the actual address *addr* for a particular byte location and the *byte_length* of the data phase (beat). This byte address is used to read the data byte from Internal Memory with the call to *do_byte_read()*, and the *set_read_data()* helper procedure sets the byte in the read transaction record. If the returned *byte_length>1*, then the code performs in the *byte_length* loop the reading and setting of the read data from internal memory for the whole of the read data phase (beat).

The read data phase is executed over the protocol signals by calling *execute_read_data_phase()*.The loop completes and restarts by waiting for another *transaction_id* to be placed into the queue.

Example 11-14. handle_read

```
end process;-- handle_read : read data and response through path 4
-- This process reads data from memory and send read data/response
process
   variable read_trans: integer;
   variable byte_length : integer;
   variable addr : std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0);
   variable data : std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
begin
   loop
   pop_transaction_id(read_trans, AXI4_QUEUE_ID_1, index, AXI4_PATH_4,
axi4_tr_if_4(index));
   set_read_data_valid_delay(read_trans, AXI4_PATH_4,
axi4_tr_if_4(index));

   get_read_addr(read_trans, 0, byte_length, addr, index, AXI4_PATH_4,
axi4_tr_if_4(index));
   do_byte_read(addr, data);
   set_read_data(read_trans, 0, byte_length, addr, data, index,
AXI4_PATH_4, axi4_tr_if_4(index));
   if byte_length > 1 then
      for j in 1 to byte_length-1 loop
         get_read_addr(read_trans, j, byte_length, addr, index,
AXI4_PATH_4, axi4_tr_if_4(index));
         do_byte_read(addr, data);
         set_read_data(read_trans, j, byte_length, addr, data, index,
AXI4_PATH_4, axi4_tr_if_4(index));
      end loop;
   end if;
   execute_read_data_phase(read_trans, index, AXI4_PATH_4,
axi4_tr_if_4(index));
   end loop;
   wait;
end process;
```

process_write

The *process_write* process works in a similar way as previously described for *process_read*. It uses unique path and queue identifiers to work concurrently with other processes, as shown in Example 11-15.

Example 11-15. process_write

```
-- process_write : write address phase through path 0
-- This process keep receiving write address phase and push the
-- transaction into queue through push_transaction_id API.
process
   variable write_trans : integer;
begin
   wait_on(AXI4_RESET_0_TO_1, index, axi4_tr_if_0(index));
   wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE, index, axi4_tr_if_0(index));
   loop
      create_slave_transaction(write_trans, index, axi4_tr_if_0(index));
      get_write_addr_phase(write_trans, index, axi4_tr_if_0(index));
```

```
            get_config(AXI4_CONFIG_NUM_OUTSTANDING_WR_PHASE,
                        tmp_config_num_outstanding_wr_phase, index,
                        AXI4_PATH_3, axi4_tr_if_0(index));
            push_transaction_id(write_trans, AXI4_QUEUE_ID_0, index,
      axi4_tr_if_0(index));
         end loop;
         wait;
      end process;
```

handle_write

The *handle_write* process works in a similar way to that previously described for *handle_read*. The main difference is that the write transaction handling gets the write data and stores it in the slave test program Internal Memory, and adhering to the state of the WSTRB write strobes signals. There is an additional *pop_transaction_id()* into a queue so that the process can send a write response phase for the transaction, as shown in Example 11-16.

Example 11-16. handle_write

```
-- handle_write : write data phase through path 1
  -- This method receive write data phase for write transaction
  process
    variable write_trans: integer;
    variable byte_length : integer;
    variable addr : std_logic_vector(AXI4_MAX_BIT_SIZE-1 downto 0);
    variable data : std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
    variable last : integer := 0;
  begin
    loop
     pop_transaction_id(write_trans, AXI4_QUEUE_ID_0, index, AXI4_PATH_1,
axi4_tr_if_1(index));

      get_write_data_phase(write_trans, 0, last, index, AXI4_PATH_1,
axi4_tr_if_1(index));
      get_write_addr_data(write_trans, 0, 0, byte_length, addr, data,
index, AXI4_PATH_1, axi4_tr_if_1(index));
      do_byte_write(addr, data);
      if byte_length > 1 then
        for j in 1 to byte_length-1 loop
          get_write_addr_data(write_trans, 0, j, byte_length, addr, data,
index, AXI4_PATH_1, axi4_tr_if_1(index));
          do_byte_write(addr, data);
        end loop;
      end if;
      push_transaction_id(write_trans, AXI4_QUEUE_ID_2, index,
AXI4_PATH_1, axi4_tr_if_1(index));
    end loop;
    wait;
  end process;
```

handle_response

The *handle_response* process sends a response back to the master to complete a write transaction. It uses unique path and queue identifiers to work concurrently with other processes.

In a *loop,* the *pop_transaction_id()* procedure call returns the *transaction_id* from the queue for the slave BFM, indexed by the *index* argument, as shown in Example 11-17. A *write_trans* variable is previously defined to hold the *transaction_id*. If the queue is empty, then *push_transaction_id()* will block until content is available.

The call to *set_wr_resp_valid_delay()* sets the BVALID signal delay for the response prior to calling *execute_write_response_phase()* to execute the response over the protocol signals.

Example 11-17. handle_response

```
-- handle_response : write response phase through path 2
-- This method sends the write response phase
process
   variable write_trans: integer;
   begin
      loop
         pop_transaction_id(write_trans, AXI4_QUEUE_ID_2, index,
AXI4_PATH_2, axi4_tr_if_2(index));
         set_wr_resp_valid_delay(write_trans, AXI4_PATH_2,
axi4_tr_if_2(index));
         execute_write_response_phase(write_trans, index, AXI4_PATH_2,
axi4_tr_if_2(index));
          tmp_config_num_outstanding_wr_phase :=
                     tmp_config_num_outstanding_wr_phase - 1;
   end loop;
   wait;
end process;
```

handle_write_addr_ready

The *handle_write_addr_ready* process handles the AWREADY signal for the write address channel. It uses a unique path identifier to work concurrently with other processes.

The handling of the AWREADY signal begins an ACLK period after the ARESETn signal is inactive, as shown in Example 11-18. In a *loop,* the AWREADY signal is deasserted using the nonblocking call to the *execute_write_addr_ready()* procedure and blocks for a write channel address phase to occur with a call to the blocking *get_write_addr_cycle()* procedure. A received write address phase indicates that the AWVALID signal has been asserted, triggering the starting point for the delay of the AWREADY signal by the number of ACLK cycles defined by *m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay*. Another call to the *execute_write_addr_ready()* procedure to assert the AWREADY signal completes the AWREADY handling.

Example 11-18. handle_write_addr_ready

```
-- handle_write_addr_ready : write address ready through path 5
  -- This method assert/de-assert the write address channel ready signal.
  -- Assertion and de-assertion is done based on
m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay
  process
    variable tmp_ready_delay : integer;
  begin
    wait_on(AXI4_RESET_0_TO_1, index, AXI4_PATH_5, axi4_tr_if_5(index));
    wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE, index, AXI4_PATH_5, axi4_tr_if_5(index));
    loop
      wait until m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay > 0;
      tmp_ready_delay := m_wr_addr_phase_ready_delay;
      execute_write_addr_ready(0, 1, index, AXI4_PATH_5,
axi4_tr_if_5(index));
      get_write_addr_cycle(index, AXI4_PATH_5, axi4_tr_if_5(index));
      if(tmp_ready_delay > 1) then
        for i in  0 to tmp_ready_delay-2 loop
          wait_on(AXI4_CLOCK_POSEDGE, index, AXI4_PATH_5,
axi4_tr_if_5(index));
        end loop;
      end if;
      execute_write_addr_ready(1, 1, index, AXI4_PATH_5,
axi4_tr_if_5(index));
    end loop;
    wait;
  end process;
```

handle_read_addr_ready

The *handle_read_addr_ready* process handles the ARREADY signal for the read address channel. It uses a unique path identifier to work concurrently with other processes. The *handle_read_addr_ready* process code works in a similar way to that previously described for the *handle_write_addr_ready* process.

handle_write_data_ready

The *handle_write_data_ready* process handles the WREADY signal for the write data channel. It uses a unique path identifier to work concurrently with other processes.

The *handle_write_data_ready* process code works in a similar way to that previously described for the *handle_write_addr_ready* process.

Chapter 12
Getting Started with Qsys and the BFMs

Note
A license is required to access the Mentor Graphics VIP AE Bus Functional Models and Inline Monitor. See "Mentor VIP AE License Requirements" on page 18 for details.

This example shows you how to use the Qsys tool in Quartus II software to create a top-level design environment. You will use the *ex1_back_to_back_sv*, a SystemVerilog example from the *$QUARTUS_ROOTDIR/../ip/altera/mentor_vip_ae/axi4lite/qsys-examples* directory in the Altera Complete Design Suite (ACDS) installation.

You will do the following tasks to set up the design environment:

1. Create a work directory.
2. Copy the example to the work directory.
3. Invoke Qsys from the Quartus II software Tools menu.
4. Generate a top-level netlist.
5. Run simulation by referencing the *README* text file and command scripts for your simulation environment.

Setting Up Simulation from a UNIX Platform

The following steps outline how to set up the simulation environment from a UNIX platform.

1. Create a work directory into which you copy the example directory *qsys-examples*, which contains the directory *ex1_back_to_back_sv* from the Installation.

   a. Using the *mkdir* command, create the work directory into which you will copy the *qsys-examples* directory.

   ```
   mkdir axi4lite-qsys-examples
   ```

   b. Using the *cp* command, copy the *qsys-examples* directory from the *Installation* directory into your work directory.

   ```
   cp -r $QUARTUS_ROOTDIR/../ip/altera/mentor_vip_ae/axi4lite/\
      qsys-examples/* axi4lite-qsys-examples/
   ```

2. Using the *cd* command, change the directory path to your local path where the example resides.

   ```
   cd axi4lite-qsys-examples/ex1_back_to_back_sv
   ```

3. Open the Qsys tool. Refer to "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362 for details.

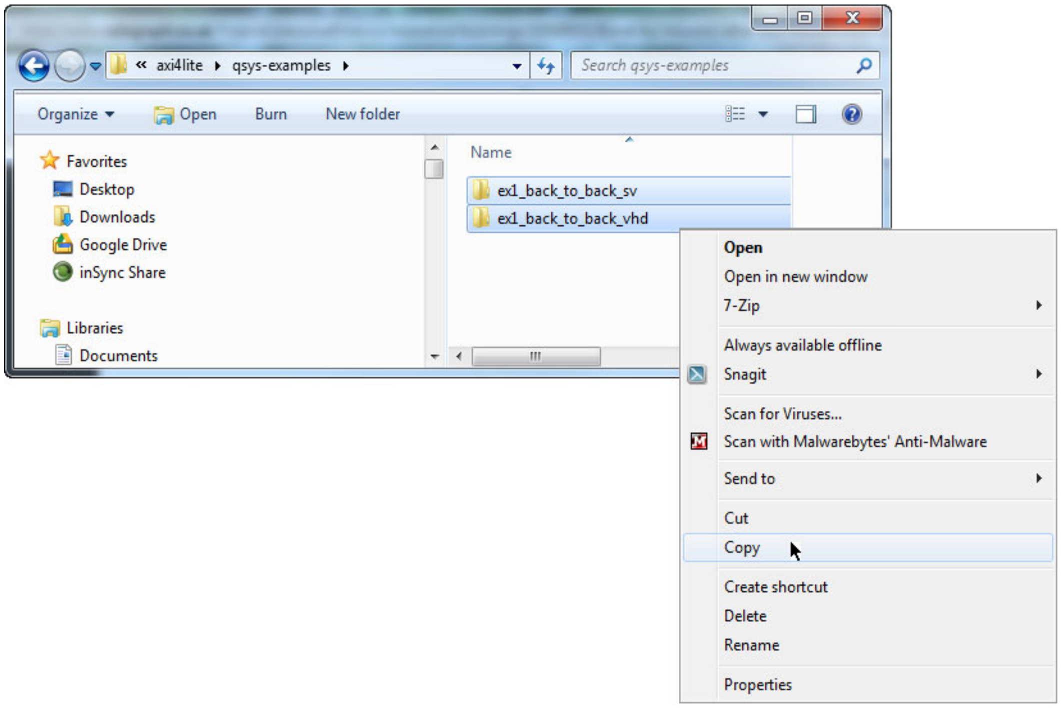
Setting Up Simulation from the Windows GUI

The following steps outline how to set up the simulation environment from a Windows GUI. This example uses the Windows7 platform.

1. Create a work folder into which you copy the contents of the *qsys-examples* folder, which includes the *ex1_back_to_back_sv* folder from the Installation.

   a. Using the GUI, select a location for your work folder, then click the *New folder* option on the window's menu bar to create and name a work folder. For this example, name the work folder *axi4lite-qsys-examples*. Refer to Figures 12-1 and 12-2 below.

Figure 12-1. Copy the Contents of *qsys-examples* from the Installation Folder



   b. Copy the contents of the *qsys-examples* folder from the *Installation* folder to your work folder.

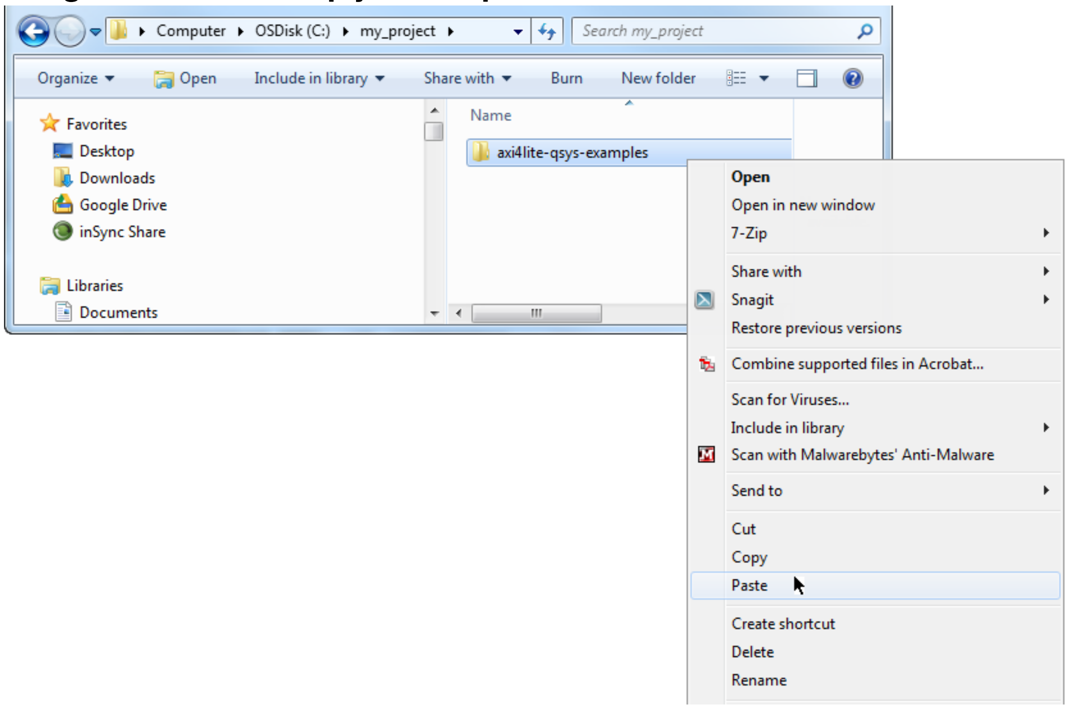
   Open the *Installation* and work folders. In the *Installation* folder, double-click the *qsys-examples* folder to select and open it. When the folder opens, type `CTRL/A` to select the contents of the directory, then right-click to display the drop-down menu and select *Copy* from the drop-down menu.

Go to the open work folder. Double-click on the folder.

When the folder opens, right-click inside the work folder and select *Paste* from the drop-down menu to copy the contents of the *qsys-examples* folder to the new *axi4lite-qsys-examples* work folder.

Paste the *qsys-examples* from the *Installation* folder into the *axi4lite-qsys-examples* work folder (refer to Figure 12-2).

Figure 12-2. Paste qsys-examples from Installation to Work Folder



Note

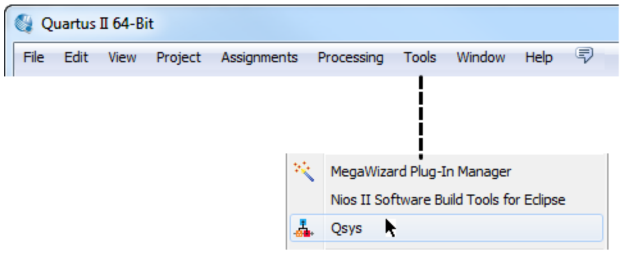
Alternatively, open both folders, the *Installation* folder containing the *qsys-examples* folder and the new *axi4lite-qsys-examples* work folder. Use the Windows *select*, *drag*, and *drop* functions to select the contents of the *qsys-examples* folder in the *Installation* folder, and then drag the contents to and drop it in the new *axi4lite-qsys-examples* work folder.

2. After creating the new *axi4lite-qsys-examples* work folder and copying the contents of the *qsys-examples* to it, open the Qsys tool. Refer to "Running the Qsys Tool" on page 362 for details.

Running the Qsys Tool

1. Open Qsys in the Quartus II software menu.
   Start the Quartus II software. When the Quartus II GUI appears, select *Tools>Qsys* (refer to Figure 12-3).

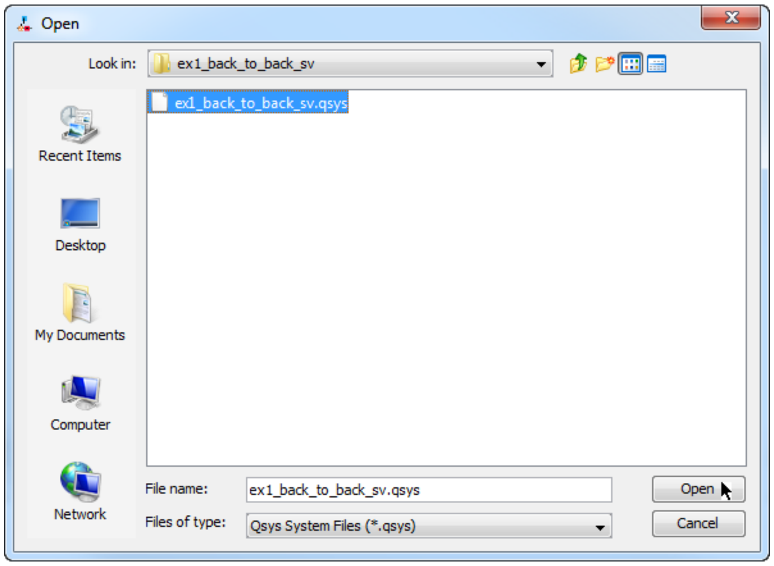
Figure 12-3. Select Qsys from the Quartus II Software Top-Level Menu



2. From the Qsys open window, use the *File>Open* command to open and select the file *ex1_back_to_back_sv.qsys.* This Qsys file is in the directory *axi4lite-qsys-examples/ex1_back_to_back_sv* (refer to Figure 12-4).

   Select and open the *ex1_back_to_back_sv.qsys* example.

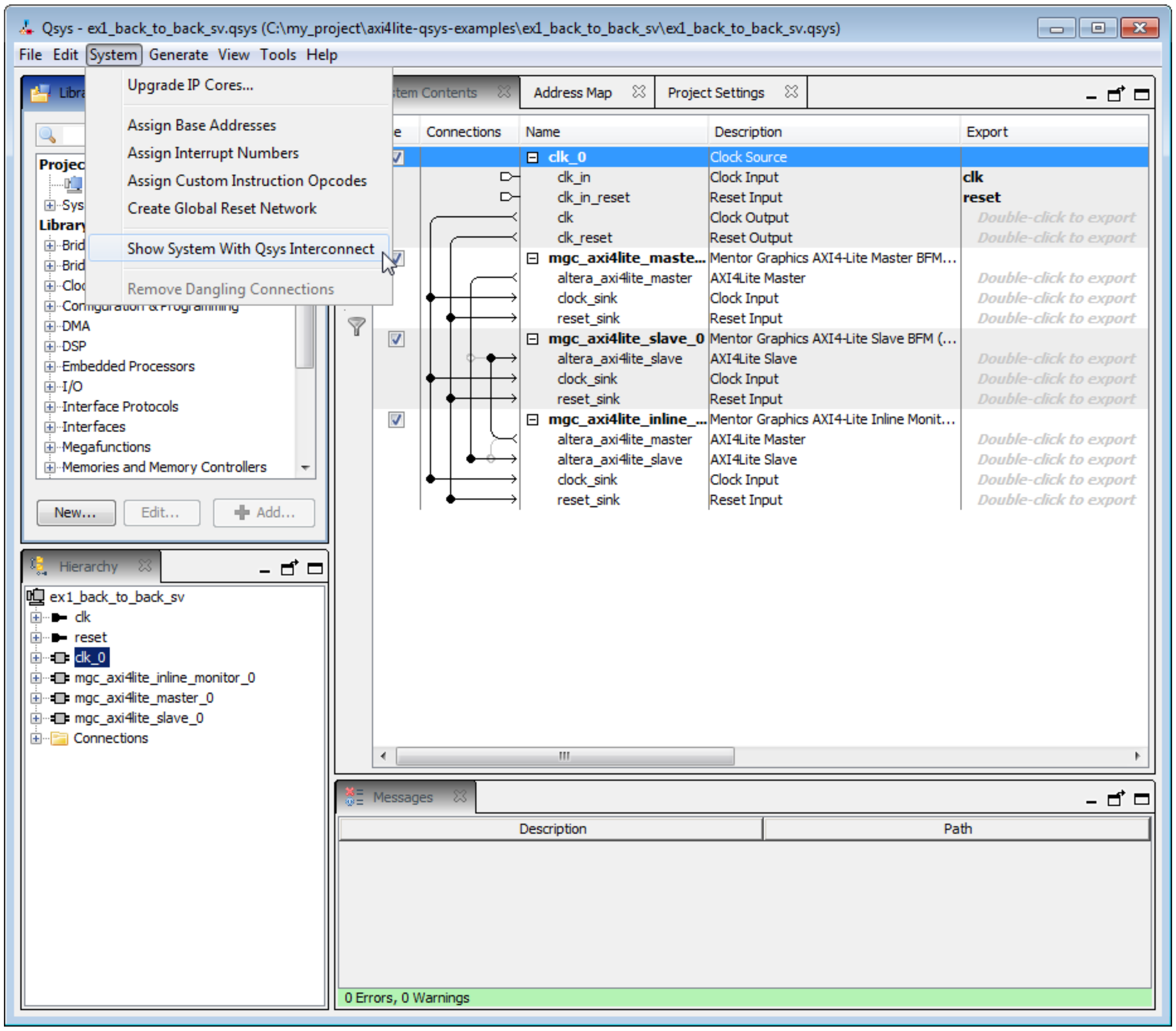
Figure 12-4. Open the *ex1_back_to_back_sv.qsys* Example



Note
If you open the Qsys tool in a subsequent session, a Qsys dialog asks you if you want to open this file.

3. Qsys displays the connectivity of the selected example as shown in Figure 12-5.

Figure 12-5. Show System With Qsys Interconnect


Qsys - ex1_back_to_back_sv.qsys (C:\my_project\axi4lite-qsys-examples\ex1_back_to_back_sv\ex1_back_to_back_sv.qsys)
File Edit System Generate View Tools Help
Upgrade IP Cores...
Assign Base Addresses
Assign Interrupt Numbers
Assign Custom Instruction Opcodes
Create Global Reset Network
Show System With Qsys Interconnect
Remove Dangling Connections
System Contents
Address Map
Project Settings
Library
Configuration & Programming
DMA
DSP
Embedded Processors
I/O
Interface Protocols
Interfaces
Megafunctions
Memories and Memory Controllers
New... Edit... Add...
Hierarchy
ex1_back_to_back_sv
clk
reset
clk_0
mgc_axi4lite_inline_monitor_0
mgc_axi4lite_master_0
mgc_axi4lite_slave_0
Connections
Messages

Name	Description	Export
clk_0	Clock Source	
clk_in	Clock Input	clk
clk_in_reset	Reset Input	reset
clk	Clock Output	Double-click to export
clk_reset	Reset Output	Double-click to export
mgc_axi4lite_maste...	Mentor Graphics AXI4-Lite Master BFM...	
altera_axi4lite_master	AXI4Lite Master	Double-click to export
clock_sink	Clock Input	Double-click to export
reset_sink	Reset Input	Double-click to export
mgc_axi4lite_slave_0	Mentor Graphics AXI4-Lite Slave BFM (...	
altera_axi4lite_slave	AXI4Lite Slave	Double-click to export
clock_sink	Clock Input	Double-click to export
reset_sink	Reset Input	Double-click to export
mgc_axi4lite_inline_...	Mentor Graphics AXI4-Lite Inline Monit...	
altera_axi4lite_master	AXI4Lite Master	Double-click to export
altera_axi4lite_slave	AXI4Lite Slave	Double-click to export
clock_sink	Clock Input	Double-click to export
reset_sink	Reset Input	Double-click to export

Description	Path

0 Errors, 0 Warnings

Note

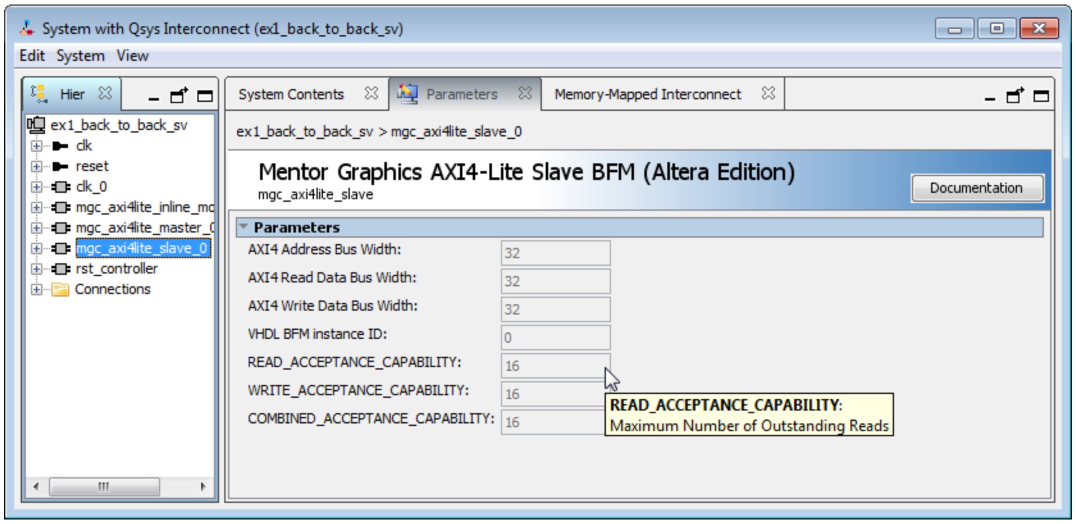
If you are using VHDL, you must select each BFM and verify that the index number specified for the BFM is correct. An information dialog displays the properties of the BFM when you select it. Ensure that the specified BFM *index* is correct in this dialog. If you do not know the correct index number, check the VHDL code for the BFM.

4. Click the *System* drop-down menu on the main Qsys toolbar, and select *Show System With Qsys Interconnect* to open the System With Qsys Interconnect options window, as shown in Figure 12-6.

5. Select a BFM within the Hierarchy pane of the System With Qsys Interconnect window, in this case the *mgc_axi*4lite*_slave_0*. Click the Parameters tab to reveal the parameter editor to review and change the selected BFM parameters.

Note
Placing the mouse pointer over a parameter name, or its value, opens a documentation popup for the parameter. Parameter documentation is also available by clicking the Documentation button.

Figure 12-6. System With Qsys Interconnect Parameters Tab


System with Qsys Interconnect (ex1_back_to_back_sv)
Edit System View
Hier
ex1_back_to_back_sv
clk
reset
clk_0
mgc_axi4lite_inline_mo
mgc_axi4lite_master_0
mgc_axi4lite_slave_0
rst_controller
Connections
System Contents
Parameters
Memory-Mapped Interconnect
ex1_back_to_back_sv > mgc_axi4lite_slave_0
Mentor Graphics AXI4-Lite Slave BFM (Altera Edition)
mgc_axi4lite_slave
Documentation
Parameters
READ_ACCEPTANCE_CAPABILITY:
Maximum Number of Outstanding Reads

AXI4 Address Bus Width:	32
AXI4 Read Data Bus Width:	32
AXI4 Write Data Bus Width:	32
VHDL BFM instance ID:	0
READ_ACCEPTANCE_CAPABILITY:	16
WRITE_ACCEPTANCE_CAPABILITY:	16
COMBINED_ACCEPTANCE_CAPABILITY:	16

6. Close the System With Qsys Interconnect window after your parameter edits are complete.

7. Click the *Generate* drop-down menu on the main Qsys toolbar, and select *Generate HDL* to open the Generation options window.

8. Specify the Generation window options, as shown in Figure 12-7.

   a. Synthesis section

      i. Set the *Create HDL design files for synthesis* to *None* to inhibit the generation of synthesis files.

      ii. Uncheck the *Create block symbol file (.bsf)* check box.

   b. Simulation section

      i. Set the *Create simulation model* to *Verilog*.

c. Change the path of the example. In the *Path* field of the Output Directory section, ensure the path correctly specifies the subdirectory *ex1_back_to_back_sv*, which is the subdirectory containing the example that you just copied into a temporary directory.

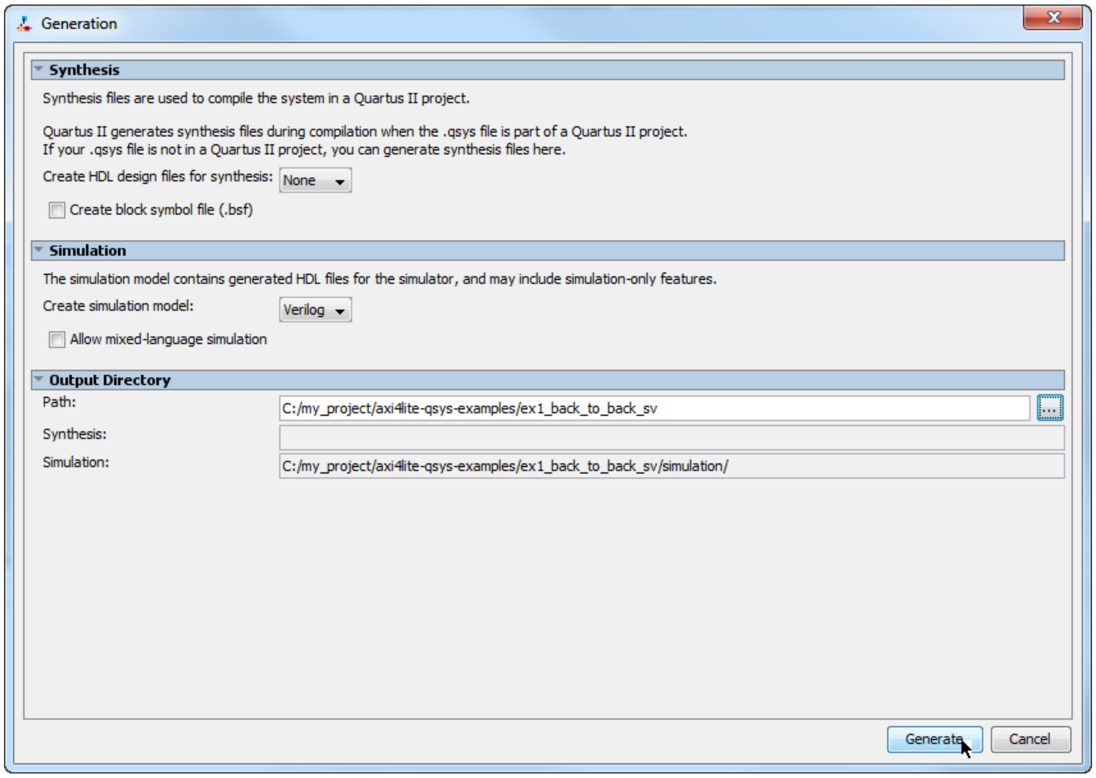
Note

If the subdirectory name of the example is duplicated in the *Path* field, you must remove one of the duplicated subdirectory names. To reset the path, double-click the square browse button to the right of the *Path* field and locate the correct path of the example.

The path name of the example specified in the *Path* field of the Output Directory section **must be correct before** generating the HDL for the example.

9. Click the *Generate* button on the bottom right side of the window, as shown in Figure 12-7.

Figure 12-7. Qsys Generation Window Options



Synthesis files are used to compile the system in a Quartus II project.

Quartus II generates synthesis files during compilation when the .qsys file is part of a Quartus II project.
If your .qsys file is not in a Quartus II project, you can generate synthesis files here.

Create HDL design files for synthesis: None

Create block symbol file (.bsf)

The simulation model contains generated HDL files for the simulator, and may include simulation-only features.

Create simulation model: Verilog

Allow mixed-language simulation

Path: C:/my_project/axi4lite-qsys-examples/ex1_back_to_back_sv

Synthesis:

Simulation: C:/my_project/axi4lite-qsys-examples/ex1_back_to_back_sv/simulation/

10. Refer to "Running a Simulation" on page 365 to start simulation.

Running a Simulation

The choice of simulator determines the process that you follow to run a simulation. The process for each simulator is detailed in the following sections:

- "ModelSim Simulation" on page 366
- "Questa Simulation" on page 370
- "Cadence IES Simulation" on page 370
- "Synopsys VCS Simulation" on page 372

For each simulator, a *README* text file and a command script file is provided in the installed Mentor VIP AE directory location *axi4lite/qsys-examples/ex1_back_to_back_sv*.

Table 12-1 details the *README* text file instructions to load a model into the simulator, and the script command file to start the simulation.

Table 12-1. SystemVerilog README Files and Script Names for all Simulators

	Questa Simulation	ModelSim Simulation	IES Simulation	VCS Simulation
README	README-Questa.txt	README-ModelSim.txt	README-IUS.txt	README-VCS.txt
Script File	example.do	example.do	example-ius.sh	example-vcs.sh

Note

The VHDL example *axi4lite/qsys-examples/ex1_back_to_back_vhd* has equivalent *README* text files and command script files. The process to follow for VHDL simulation is similar to that for SystemVerilog simulation.

ModelSim Simulation

You can run a ModelSim simulation from a GUI interface or a command line. Before starting a simulation, you must do the following:

- Check that the *$QUARTUS_ROOTDIR* environment variable points to the Quartus II software directory in the Quartus II software installation. The example command script *example.do* requires this variable to locate the installed Mentor VIP AE BFMs during simulation.
- Ensure that the environment variable *MvcHome* points to the location of the installed Mentor VIP AE BFM. You can set the location of *MvcHome* using one of the following options:
  - To set the *MvcHome* variable in the *modelsim.ini* file, refer to "Editing the modelsim.ini File" on page 369."
  - To specify the *-mvchome* option on the command line, refer to "Starting a Simulation from a UNIX Command Line" on page 368."

The following sections outline how to run a ModelSim simulation from either a GUI or a command line.

Starting a Simulation from the ModelSim GUI

To start a simulation with the ModelSim simulator GUI:

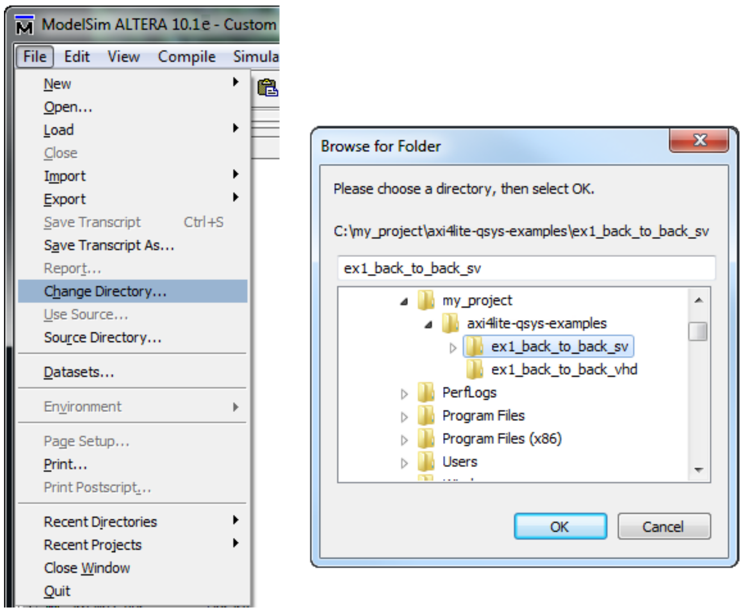
1. Start the ModelSim GUI.

```
vsim -mvchome $QUARTUS_ROOTDIR/../ip/altera/mentor_vip_ae/common
```

2. Change the directory to the work directory that contains the example to be simulated with method (a) or (b) below.

   a. From the *File* menu, click the *Change Directory* option. When the *Browse for Folder* dialog appears, select the work directory that contains the example.

Figure 12-8. Select the Work Directory



Please choose a directory, then select OK.

C:\my_project\axi4lite-qsys-examples\ex1_back_to_back_sv

ex1_back_to_back_sv

   b. In the ModelSim Transcript window, change to the work directory containing the example to simulate:

```
vsim> cd axi4lite-qsys-examples/ex1_back_to_back_sv
```

3. Run the *example.do* script within the Transcript window by typing the following command to compile and elaborate the test programs:

```
vsim> do example.do
```

Note

For details about the processing performed by the *example.do* script, refer to "ModelSim Example Script Processing" on page 368.

4. In the Transcript window, start the simulation and run to completion:

```
vsim> run -all
```

Starting a Simulation from a UNIX Command Line

To start a simulation with the ModelSim simulator from a UNIX command line:

1. Change the directory to the work directory containing the example to be simulated.

```
cd axi4lite-qsys-examples/ex1_back_to_back_sv
```

2. In a shell, start the Modelsim simulator with the *example.do* script.

```
vsim -mvchome $QUARTUS_ROOTDIR/../ip/altera/\
      mentor_vip_ae/common -gui -do example.do
```

Note

For details about the processing performed by the *example.do* script, refer to "ModelSim Example Script Processing" on page 368.

3. In the Transcript window, start the simulation and run to completion.

```
vsim> run -all
```

ModelSim Example Script Processing

The *example.do* script described below is contained in the installed Mentor VIP AE directory location *axi4lite/qsys-examples/ex1_back_to_back_sv*.

The Mentor VIP AE BFMs for AXI4-Lite are compiled.

```
set TOP_LEVEL_NAME top
set QSYS_SIMDIR    simulation

source $QSYS_SIMDIR/mentor/msim_setup.tcl
if {![info exists env(MENTOR_VIP_AE)]}
{
  set env(MENTOR_VIP_AE) $env(QUARTUS_ROOTDIR)/../ip/altera/mentor_vip_ae
}

   ensure_lib libraries
   ensure_lib libraries/work
   vmap work  libraries/work

   vlog -work work -sv \
      $env(MENTOR_VIP_AE)/common/questa_mvc_svapi.svh \
      $env(MENTOR_VIP_AE)/axi4/bfm/mgc_common_axi4.sv \
      $env(MENTOR_VIP_AE)/axi4/bfm/mgc_axi4_monitor.sv \
      $env(MENTOR_VIP_AE)/axi4/bfm/mgc_axi4_inline_monitor.sv \
      $env(MENTOR_VIP_AE)/axi4/bfm/mgc_axi4_master.sv \
      $env(MENTOR_VIP_AE)/axi4/bfm/mgc_axi4_slave.sv
```

The two *tcl* alias commands *dev_com* and *com* compile the required design files. These alias commands are defined in the *msim_setup.tcl* simulation script generated by Qsys, along with the simulation model files:

```
# Compile device library files
dev_com

# Compile Qsys-generated design files
com
```

The three example test programs are compiled:

```
# Compile example test program files
vlog  master_test_program.sv
vlog   slave_test_program.sv
vlog monitor_test_program.sv
```

The example top-level file is compiled:

```
# Compile top-level design file
vlog top.sv
```

Simulation starts with the *elab* alias defined in the *msim_setup.tcl* simulation script generated by Qsys:

```
# Simulate
elab
```

Editing the modelsim.ini File

The ModelSim simulator does not have a default installation directory path defined for the environment variable *MvcHome*; therefore, you must define a path for this variable.

Note

Setting *MvcHome* within the *modelsim.ini* file eliminates the need to specify the *-mvchome* option on the *vsim* command line.

To provide the installation directory path of the Mentor VIP AE for running a ModelSim simulation:

1. Edit the *modelsim.ini* file and find the section that starts with *[vsim]*.
2. Search for *MvcHome*. If it is not already defined in the *modelsim.ini* file, you must add it. You can add this variable at any location in the *[vsim]* section.

If the *modelsim.ini* file is read-only, you must modify the permissions of the file to allow write access.

3. Add or change the *MvcHome* path to point to the location where the Mentor VIP AE is installed. Do not forget the *common* subdirectory.

```
MvcHome = $QUARTUS_ROOTDIR/../ip/altera/mentor_vip_ae/common
```

Note

Do not use the ModelSim *vmap* command to specify the installed location of the Mentor VIP AE because this places the definition of the environment variable *MvcHome* in the *[library]* section of *modelsim.ini*. For example, do not use the command `vmap MvcHome $QUARTUS_ROOTDIR/../ip/altera/mentor_vip_ae/common`.

Questa Simulation

To run a Questa simulation, follow the process detailed in "ModelSim Simulation" on page 366.

Cadence IES Simulation

Before starting a Cadence IES simulation, you must do the following:

- Check that the *$QUARTUS_ROOTDIR* environment variable points to the Quartus II software directory in the Quartus II software installation. The example script *example-ius.sh* requires this variable to locate the Mentor VIP AE BFMs during simulation.
- Set the environment variable *CDS_ROOT* to the installation directory of the IES Verilog compiler *ncvlog*. The *cds_root* command returns the installation directory of the specified tool *ncvlog*.

```
setenv CDS_ROOT        `cds_root ncvlog`
```

Starting a Simulation from a UNIX Command Line

To start a simulation with the Cadence IES simulator from a UNIX command line:

1. Change the directory to the work directory containing the example to be simulated:

```
cd axi4lite-qsys-examples/ex1_back_to_back_sv
```

2. Start the Cadence IES simulator with the *example-ius.sh* script.
   - For a 32-bit simulation, execute this command:

```
sh example-ius.sh 32
```

   - For a 64-bit simulation, execute this command:

```
sh example-ius.sh 64
```

Note
For details about the process steps performed by the *example-ius.sh* script, refer to "Cadence IES Example Script Processing" on page 371.

Cadence IES Example Script Processing

The *example-ius.sh* script described below is contained in the installed Mentor VIP AE directory location *axi4lite/qsys-examples/ex1_back_to_back_sv*.

The Mentor VIP AE BFMs for AXI4-Lite are compiled. The *ncsim_setup.sh* simulation script is generated by Qsys, along with the simulation model files.

```
#!/bin/sh

# Usage: <command> [32|64]
# 32 bit mode is run unless 64 is passed in as the first argument.

MENTOR_VIP_AE=${MENTOR_VIP_AE:-$QUARTUS_ROOTDIR/../ip/ \
                              altera/mentor_vip_ae}

if [ "$1" == "64" ]
then
   export QUESTA_MVC_GCC_LIB=$MENTOR_VIP_AE/common/ \
         questa_mvc_core/linux_x86_64_gcc-4.4_ius
   export INCA_64BIT=1
else
   export QUESTA_MVC_GCC_LIB=$MENTOR_VIP_AE/common/ \
         questa_mvc_core/linux_gcc-4.4_ius
fi
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=$QUESTA_MVC_GCC_LIB:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH

cd simulation/cadence
# Run once, just to execute the 'mkdir' for the libraries.
source ncsim_setup.sh SKIP_DEV_COM=1 SKIP_COM=1 SKIP_ELAB=1 SKIP_SIM=1

# Compile VIP
   ncvlog -sv \
      "$MENTOR_VIP_AE/common/questa_mvc_svapi.svh" \
      "$MENTOR_VIP_AE/axi4/bfm/mgc_common_axi4.sv" \
      "$MENTOR_VIP_AE/axi4/bfm/mgc_axi4_monitor.sv" \
      "$MENTOR_VIP_AE/axi4/bfm/mgc_axi4_inline_monitor.sv" \
      "$MENTOR_VIP_AE/axi4/bfm/mgc_axi4_master.sv" \
      "$MENTOR_VIP_AE/axi4/bfm/mgc_axi4_slave.sv"
```

The three example test programs are compiled:

```
# Compile the test program
ncvlog -sv ../../master_test_program.sv
ncvlog -sv ../../monitor_test_program.sv
ncvlog -sv ../../slave_test_program.sv
```

The example top-level file is compiled:

```
# Compile the top
ncvlog -sv ../../top.sv
```

Elaboration and simulation starts with the *ncsim_setup.sh* command. The Cadence IES simulator requires the SystemVerilog library path *-sv_lib* to be passed to the simulator.

```
# Elaborate and simulate
source ncsim_setup.sh \
   USER_DEFINED_ELAB_OPTIONS="\"-timescale 1ns/1ns\"" \
   USER_DEFINED_SIM_OPTIONS="\"-MESSAGES \
      -sv_lib $QUESTA_MVC_GCC_LIB/libaxi_IN_SystemVerilog_IUS_full\"" \
   TOP_LEVEL_NAME=top
```

Synopsys VCS Simulation

Before starting a Synopsys VCS simulation, you must do the following:

- Ensure that the *$QUARTUS_ROOTDIR* environment variable points to the Quartus II software directory in the Quartus II software installation. The example script *example-vcs.sh* requires this variable to locate the Mentor VIP AE BFMs during simulation.
- Set the environment variable *VCS_HOME* to the installation directory of the VCS Verilog compiler.

  ```
  setenv VCS_HOME <Installation-of-VCS>
  ```

Starting a Simulation from a UNIX Command Line

To start a simulation with the Synopsys VCS simulator from a UNIX command line:

1. Change the directory to the work directory containing the example to be simulated:

   ```
   cd axi4lite-qsys-examples/ex1_back_to_back_sv
   ```

2. Start the Synopsys VCS simulator with the *example-vcs.sh* script. F
   - For a 32-bit simulation, execute this command:

     ```
     sh example-vcs.sh 32
     ```

   - For a 64-bit simulation, execute this command:

     ```
     sh example-vcs.sh 64
     ```

Note
For details about the process steps performed by the *example-vcs.sh* script, refer to "Synopsys VCS Example Script Processing" on page 373.

Synopsys VCS Example Script Processing

The *example-vcs.sh* script described below is contained in the installed Mentor VIP AE directory location *axi4lite/qsys-examples/ex1_back_to_back_sv*.

The Mentor VIP AE BFMs for AXI4-Lite are compiled. The *vcs_setup.sh* simulation script is generated by Qsys, along with the simulation model files.

```
#!/bin/sh

# Usage: <command> [32|64]
# 32 bit mode is run unless 64 is passed in as the first argument.

MENTOR_VIP_AE=${MENTOR_VIP_AE:-
$QUARTUS_ROOTDIR/../ip/altera/mentor_vip_ae}

if [ "$1" == "64" ]
then
   export RUN_64bit=-full64
   export VCS_TARGET_ARCH=`getsimarch 64`
   export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=${VCS_HOME}/gnu/linux/gcc-4.7.2_64-shared/lib64
   export QUESTA_MVC_GCC_PATH=${VCS_HOME}/gnu/linux/gcc-4.7.2_64-shared
   export QUESTA_MVC_GCC_LIB=${MENTOR_VIP_AE}/common/ \
                            questa_mvc_core/linux_x86_64_gcc-4.7.2_vcs
else
   export RUN_64bit=
   export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=${VCS_HOME}/gnu/linux/gcc-4.7.2_32-shared/lib
   export QUESTA_MVC_GCC_PATH=${VCS_HOME}/gnu/linux/gcc-4.7.2_32-shared
   export QUESTA_MVC_GCC_LIB=${MENTOR_VIP_AE}/common/ \
                            questa_mvc_core/linux_gcc-4.7.2_vcs
fi

cd simulation/synopsys/vcs
rm -rf csrc simv simv.daidir transcript ucli.key vc_hdrs.h

# VCS accepts the -LDFLAGS flag on the command line, but the shell quoting
# is too difficult. Just set the LDFLAGS ENV variable for the compiler to
# pick up. Alternatively, use the VCS command line option '-file' with the
# LDFLAGS set (this avoids shell quoting issues).
# vcs-switches.f:
# -LDFLAGS "-L ${QUESTA_MVC_GCC_LIB} -Wl,-rpath ${QUESTA_MVC_GCC_LIB}
# -laxi4_IN_SystemVerilog_VCS_full"
export LDFLAGS="-L ${QUESTA_MVC_GCC_LIB} -Wl, \
-rpath ${QUESTA_MVC_GCC_LIB} -laxi4_IN_SystemVerilog_VCS_full"

USER_DEFINED_ELAB_OPTIONS="\"\
   $RUN_64bit \
   +systemverilogext+.sv +vpi +acc +vcs+lic+wait \
   -cpp ${QUESTA_MVC_GCC_PATH}/xbin/g++ \
   \
   $MENTOR_VIP_AE/common/questa_mvc_svapi.svh \
   $MENTOR_VIP_AE/axi4/bfm/mgc_common_axi4.sv \
   $MENTOR_VIP_AE/axi4/bfm/mgc_axi4_monitor.sv \
   $MENTOR_VIP_AE/axi4/bfm/mgc_axi4_inline_monitor.sv \
   $MENTOR_VIP_AE/axi4/bfm/mgc_axi4_slave.sv \
   $MENTOR_VIP_AE/axi4/bfm/mgc_axi4_master.sv \
   \
```

The three example test programs and top-level file are compiled:

```
      ../../../master_test_program.sv \
      ../../../monitor_test_program.sv  \
      ../../../slave_test_program.sv \
      ../../../top.sv  \""
```

Elaboration and simulation starts with the *vcs_setup.sh* command:

```
   source vcs_setup.sh \
      USER_DEFINED_ELAB_OPTIONS="$USER_DEFINED_ELAB_OPTIONS" \
      USER_DEFINED_SIM_OPTIONS="'-l transcript'" \
      TOP_LEVEL_NAME=top
```

Appendix A

AXI4-Lite Assertions

The AXI4-Lite master, slave, and monitor BFMs all support error checking with the firing of one or more assertions when a property defined in the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification has been violated. Each assertion can be individually enabled/disabled using the *set_config()* function for a particular BFM. The property covered for each assertion is noted in under the Property Reference column. The reference number refers to the section number in the AMBA AXI Protocol Specification.

Note
The AXI4-Lite BFM assertions cover the full AXI4 protocol.

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60000	AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH_EXCEEDS_64	AXI4 supports up to 64-bit addressing.	A10.3.1
AXI4-60001	AXI4_ADDR_FOR_READ_BURST_ ACROSS_4K_BOUNDARY	This read transaction has crossed a 4KB boundary.	A3.4.1
AXI4-60002	AXI4_ADDR_FOR_WRITE_BURST_ ACROSS_4K_BOUNDARY	This write transaction has crossed a 4KB boundary.	A3.4.1
AXI4-60003	AXI4_ARADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_ ARREADY	The value of ARADDR has changed from its initial value between the time ARVALID was asserted and before ARREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60004	AXI4_ARADDR_FALLS_IN_REGION_ HOLE	The ARADDR value cannot be decoded to a region in the region map.	A8.2.1
AXI4-60005	AXI4_ARADDR_UNKN	ARADDR has an X value/ARADDR has a Z value.	
AXI4-60006	AXI4_ARBURST_CHANGED_BEFORE_ ARREADY	The value of ARBURST has changed from its initial value between the time ARVALID was asserted and before ARREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60007	AXI4_ARBURST_UNKN	ARBURST has an X value/ARBURST has a Z value.	

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60008	AXI4_ARCACHE_CHANGED_BEFORE_ARREADY	The value of ARCACHE has changed from its initial value between the time ARVALID was asserted and before ARREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60009	AXI4_ARCACHE_UNKN	ARCACHE has an X value/ARCACHE has a Z value.	
AXI4-60010	AXI4_ARID_CHANGED_BEFORE_ARREADY	The value of ARID has changed from its initial value between the time ARVALID was asserted and before ARREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60011	AXI4_ARID_UNKN	ARID has an X value/ARID has a Z value.	
AXI4-60012	AXI4_ARLEN_CHANGED_BEFORE_ARREADY	The value of ARLEN has changed from its initial value between the time ARVALID was asserted and before ARREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60013	AXI4_ARLEN_UNKN	ARLEN has an X value/ARLEN has a Z value.	
AXI4-60014	AXI4_ARLOCK_CHANGED_BEFORE_ARREADY	The value of ARLOCK has changed from its initial value between the time ARVALID was asserted and before ARREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60015	AXI4_ARLOCK_UNKN	ARLOCK has an X value/ARLOCK has a Z value.	
AXI4-60016	AXI4_ARPROT_CHANGED_BEFORE_ARREADY	The value of ARPROT has changed from its initial value between the time ARVALID was asserted and before ARREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60017	AXI4_ARPROT_UNKN	ARPROT has an X value/ARPROT has a Z value.	
AXI4-60018	AXI4_ARQOS_CHANGED_BEFORE_ARREADY	The value of ARQOS has changed from its initial value between the time ARVALID was asserted and before ARREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60019	AXI4_ARQOS_UNKN	ARQOS has an X value/ARQOS has a Z value.	
AXI4-60020	AXI4_ARREADY_NOT_ASSERTED_AFTER_ARVALID	Once ARVALID has been asserted ARREADY should be asserted in config_max_latency_ARVALID_assertion_to_ARREADY clock periods.	
AXI4-60021	AXI4_ARREADY_UNKN	ARREADY has an X value/ARREADY has a Z value.	

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60022	AXI4_ARREGION_CHANGED_BEFORE_ARREADY	The value of ARREGION has changed from its initial value between the time ARVALID was asserted and before ARREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60023	AXI4_ARREGION_MISMATCH	The ARREGION value does not match the value defined in the region map.	A8.2.1
AXI4-60024	AXI4_ARREGION_UNKN	ARREGION has an X value/ARREGION has a Z value.	
AXI4-60025	AXI4_ARSIZE_CHANGED_BEFORE_ARREADY	The value of ARSIZE has changed from its initial value between the time ARVALID was asserted and before ARREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60026	AXI4_ARSIZE_UNKN	ARSIZE has an X value/ARSIZE has a Z value.	
AXI4-60027	AXI4_ARUSER_CHANGED_BEFORE_ARREADY	The value of ARUSER has changed from its initial value between the time ARVALID was asserted and before ARREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60028	AXI4_ARUSER_UNKN	ARUSER has an X value/ARUSER has a Z value.	
AXI4-60029	AXI4_ARVALID_DEASSERTED_BEFORE_ARREADY	ARVALID has been de-asserted before ARREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60030	AXI4_ARVALID_HIGH_ON_FIRST_CLOCK	A master interface must begin driving ARVALID high only at a rising clock edge after ARESETn is HIGH.	A3.1.2
AXI4-60031	AXI4_ARVALID_UNKN	ARVALID has an X value/ARVALID has a Z value.	
AXI4-60032	AXI4_AWADDR_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY	The value of AWADDR has changed from its initial value between the time AWVALID was asserted and before AWREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60033	AXI4_AWADDR_FALLS_IN_REGION_HOLE	The addr value cannot be decoded to a region in the region map.	A8.2.1
AXI4-60034	AXI4_AWADDR_UNKN	AWADDR has an X value/AWADDR has a Z value.	
AXI4-60035	AXI4_AWBURST_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY	The value of AWBURST has changed from its initial value between the time AWVALID was asserted and before AWREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60036	AXI4_AWBURST_UNKN	AWBURST has an X value/AWBURST has a Z value.	

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60037	AXI4_AWCACHE_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY	The value of AWCACHE has changed from its initial value between the time AWVALID was asserted and before AWREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60038	AXI4_AWCACHE_UNKN	AWCACHE has an X value/AWCACHE has a Z value.	
AXI4-60039	AXI4_AWID_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY	The value of AWID has changed from its initial value between the time AWVALID was asserted and before AWREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60040	AXI4_AWID_UNKN	AWID has an X value/AWID has a Z value.	
AXI4-60041	AXI4_AWLEN_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY	The value of AWLEN has changed from its initial value between the time AWVALID was asserted and before AWREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60042	AXI4_AWLEN_UNKN	AWLEN has an X value/AWLEN has a Z value.	
AXI4-60043	AXI4_AWLOCK_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY	The value of AWLOCK has changed from its initial value between the time AWVALID was asserted and before AWREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60044	AXI4_AWLOCK_UNKN	AWLOCK has an X value/AWLOCK has a Z value.	
AXI4-60045	AXI4_AWPROT_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY	The value of AWPROT has changed from its initial value between the time AWVALID was asserted and before AWREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60046	AXI4_AWPROT_UNKN	AWPROT has an X value/AWPROT has a Z value.	
AXI4-60047	AXI4_AWQOS_CHANGED_BEFORE_AWREADY	The value of AWQOS has changed from its initial value between the time AWVALID was asserted and before AWREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60048	AXI4_AWQOS_UNKN	AWQOS has an X value/AWQOS has a Z value.	
AXI4-60049	AXI4_AWREADY_NOT_ASSERTED_AFTER_AWVALID	Once AWVALID has been asserted AWREADY should be asserted in *config_max_latency_AWVALID_assertion_to_AWREADY* clock periods.	
AXI4-60050	AXI4_AWREADY_UNKN	AWREADY has an X value/AWREADY has a Z value.	

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60051	AXI4_AWREGION_CHANGED_BEFORE_ AWREADY	The value of AWREGION has changed from its initial value between the time AWVALID was asserted and before AWREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60052	AXI4_AWREGION_MISMATCH	The AWREGION value does not match the value defined in the region map.	A8.2.1
AXI4-60053	AXI4_AWREGION_UNKN	AWREGION has an X value/AWREGION has a Z value.	
AXI4-60054	AXI4_AWSIZE_CHANGED_BEFORE_ AWREADY	The value of AWSIZE has changed from its initial value between the time AWVALID was asserted and before AWREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60055	AXI4_AWSIZE_UNKN	AWSIZE has an X value/AWSIZE has a Z value.	
AXI4-60056	AXI4_AWUSER_CHANGED_BEFORE_ AWREADY	The value of AWUSER has changed from its initial value between the time AWVALID was asserted and before AWREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60057	AXI4_AWUSER_UNKN	AWUSER has an X value/AWUSER has a Z value.	
AXI4-60058	AXI4_AWVALID_DEASSERTED_BEFORE_ AWREADY	AWVALID has been de-asserted before AWREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60059	AXI4_AWVALID_HIGH_ON_FIRST_ CLOCK	A master interface must begin driving AWVALID high only at a rising clock edge after ARESETn is HIGH.	A3.1.2
AXI4-60060	AXI4_AWVALID_UNKN	AWVALID has an X value/AWVALID has a Z value.	
AXI4-60061	AXI4_BID_CHANGED_BEFORE_BREADY	The value of BID has changed from its initial value between the time BVALID was asserted and before BREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60062	AXI4_BID_UNKN	BID has an X value/BID has a Z value.	
AXI4-60063	AXI4_BREADY_NOT_ASSERTED_AFTER_ BVALID	When BVALID has been asserted BREADY should be asserted in *config_max_latency_BVALID_assertion_to_BREADY* clock periods.	
AXI4-60064	AXI4_BREADY_UNKN	BREADY has an X value/BREADY has a Z value.	
AXI4-60065	AXI4_BRESP_CHANGED_BEFORE_BREADY	The value of BRESP has changed from its initial value between the time BVALID was asserted and before BREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60066	AXI4_BRESP_UNKN	BRESP has an X value/BRESP has a Z value.	
AXI4-60067	AXI4_BUSER_CHANGED_BEFORE_BREADY	The value of BUSER has changed from its initial value between the time BVALID was asserted and before BREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60068	AXI4_BUSER_UNKN	BUSER has an X value/BUSER has a Z value.	
AXI4-60069	AXI4_BVALID_DEASSERTED_BEFORE_ BREADY	BVALID has been de-asserted before BREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60070	AXI4_BVALID_HIGH_EXITING_RESET	BVALID should have been driven low when exiting reset.	A3.1.2
AXI4-60071	AXI4_BVALID_UNKN	BVALID has an X value/BVALID has a Z value.	
AXI4-60072	AXI4_DEC_ERR_RESP_FOR_READ	No slave at the address for this read transfer (signaled by AXI4_DECERR).	
AXI4-60073	AXI4_DEC_ERR_RESP_FOR_WRITE	No slave at the address for this write transfer (signaled by AXI4_DECERR).	
AXI4-60074	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_READ_ACCESS_ MODIFIABLE	The modifiable bit (bit 1 of the cache parameter) should not be set for an exclusive read access.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60075	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_READ_BYTES_ TRANSFER_EXCEEDS_128	Number of bytes in an exclusive read transaction must be less than or equal to 128.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60076	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_READ_BYTES_ TRANSFER_NOT_POWER_OF_2	Number of bytes of an exclusive read transaction is not a power of 2.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60077	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_READ_LENGTH_ EXCEEDS_16	Exclusive read accesses are not permitted to use a burst length greater than 16.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60078	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_WR_ADDRESS_NOT_ SAME_AS_RD	Exclusive write does not match the address of the previous exclusive read to this id.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60079	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_WR_BURST_NOT_SAME_ AS_RD	Exclusive write does not match the burst setting of the previous exclusive read to this id.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60080	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_WR_CACHE_NOT_SAME_ AS_RD	Exclusive write does not match the cache setting of the previous exclusive read to this id (see the *ARM AXI4 compliance-checker AXI4_RECM_EXCL_MATCH* assertion code).	
AXI4-60081	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_WRITE_ACCESS_ MODIFIABLE	The modifiable bit (bit 1 of the cache parameter) should not be set for an exclusive write access.	A7.2.4

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60082	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_WR_LENGTH_NOT_SAME_AS_RD	Exclusive write does not match the length of the previous exclusive read to this id.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60083	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_WR_PROT_NOT_SAME_AS_RD	Exclusive write does not match the prot setting of the previous exclusive read to this id.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60084	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_WR_REGION_NOT_SAME_AS_RD	Exclusive write does not match the region setting of the previous exclusive read to this id.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60085	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_WR_SIZE_NOT_SAME_AS_RD	Exclusive write does not match the size of the previous exclusive read to this id.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60086	AXI4_EXOKAY_RESPONSE_NORMAL_READ	Slave has responded AXI4_EXOKAY to a non exclusive read transfer.	
AXI4-60087	AXI4_EXOKAY_RESPONSE_NORMAL_WRITE	Slave has responded AXI4_EXOKAY to a non exclusive write transfer.	
AXI4-60088	AXI4_EX_RD_EXOKAY_RESP_EXPECTED_OKAY	Expected AXI4_OKAY response to this exclusive read (because the parameters did not meet the the restrictions) but got AXI4_EXOKAY.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60089	AXI4_EX_RD_EXOKAY_RESP_SLAVE_WITHOUT_EXCLUSIVE_ACCESS	Response for an exclusive read to a slave which does not support exclusive access should be AXI4_OKAY but it returned AXI4_EXOKAY.	A7.2.5
AXI4-60090	AXI4_EX_RD_OKAY_RESP_EXPECTED_EXOKAY	Expected AXI4_EXOKAY response to this exclusive read (because the parameters met the restrictions) but got AXI4_OKAY.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60091	AXI4_EX_RD_WHEN_EX_NOT_ENABLED	An exclusive read should not be issued when exclusive transactions are not enabled.	
AXI4-60092	AXI4_EX_WRITE_BEFORE_EX_READ_RESPONSE	Exclusive write has occurred with no previous exclusive read.	
AXI4-60093	AXI4_EX_WRITE_EXOKAY_RESP_EXPECTED_OKAY	Exclusive write has not been successful but slave has responded with AXI4_EXOKAY.	A7.2.2
AXI4-60094	AXI4_EX_WRITE_EXOKAY_RESP_SLAVE_WITHOUT_EXCLUSIVE_ACCESS	Response for an exclusive write to a slave which does not support exclusive access should be AXI4_OKAY but it returned AXI4_EXOKAY.	A7.2.5

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60095	AXI4_EX_WRITE_OKAY_RESP_ EXPECTED_EXOKAY	An AXI4_OKAY response to an exclusive write occurred but an AXI4_EXOKAY response had been expected. If the slave has multiple interfaces to the system this check should be disabled as it is possible for this response to occur as a result of activity on another port.	A7.2.2
AXI4-60096	AXI4_EX_WR_WHEN_EX_NOT_ENABLED	An exclusive write should not be issued when exclusive transactions are not enabled.	
AXI4-60097	AXI4_ILLEGAL_ARCACHE_VALUE_FOR_ CACHEABLE_ADDRESS_REGION	For a read from a cacheable address region one of bits 2 or 3 of the cache parameter must be HIGH.	A4.5
AXI4-60098	AXI4_ILLEGAL_ARCACHE_VALUE_FOR_ NON_CACHEABLE_ADDRESS_REGION	For a read from a non-cacheable address region bits 2 and 3 of the cache parameter must be LOW.	A4.5
AXI4-60099	AXI4_ILLEGAL_AWCACHE_VALUE_FOR_ CACHEABLE_ADDRESS_REGION	For a write to a cacheable address region one of bits 2 or 3 of the cache parameter must be HIGH.	A4.5
AXI4-60100	AXI4_ILLEGAL_AWCACHE_VALUE_FOR_ NON_CACHEABLE_ADDRESS_ REGION	For a write to a non-cacheable address region bits 2 and 3 of the cache parameter must be LOW.	A4.5
AXI4-60101	AXI4_ILLEGAL_LENGTH_FIXED_READ_ BURST	In the last read address phase burst_length has an illegal value for a burst of type AXI4_FIXED.	A3.4.1
AXI4-60102	AXI4_ILLEGAL_LENGTH_FIXED_WRITE_ BURST	In the last write address phase burst_length has an illegal value for a burst of type AXI4_FIXED.	A3.4.1
AXI4-60103	AXI4_ILLEGAL_LENGTH_WRAPPING_READ_ BURST	In the last read address phase burst_length has an illegal value for a burst of type AXI4_WRAP.	A3.4.1
AXI4-60104	AXI4_ILLEGAL_LENGTH_WRAPPING_ WRITE_BURST	In the last write address phase burst_length has an illegal value for a burst of type AXI4_WRAP.	A3.4.1
AXI4-60105	AXI4_ILLEGAL_RESPONSE_ EXCLUSIVE_READ	Response for an exclusive read should be either AXI4_OKAY or AXI4_EXOKAY.	
AXI4-60106	AXI4_ILLEGAL_RESPONSE_ EXCLUSIVE_WRITE	Response for an exclusive write should be either AXI4_OKAY or AXI4_EXOKAY.	
AXI4-60107	AXI4_INVALID_REGION_CARDINALITY	The configuration parameter config_slave_regions does not lie in the range 1-16 inclusive.	A8.2.1.
AXI4-60108	AXI4_INVALID_WRITE_STROBES_ON_ ALIGNED_WRITE_TRANSFER	Write strobe(s) incorrect for address/size of an aligned transaction.	A3.4.3

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60109	AXI4_INVALID_WRITE_STROBES_ON_UNALIGNED_WRITE_TRANSFER	Write strobe(s) incorrect for address/size of an unaligned transaction.	A3.4.3
AXI4-60110	AXI4_MINIMUM_SLAVE_ADDRESS_SPACE_VIOLATION	The minimum address space occupied by a single slave device is 4 kilobytes.	A10.3.2
AXI4-60111	AXI4_NON_INCREASING_REGION_SPECIFICATION	A region address-range has an upper bound smaller than the lower bound.	
AXI4-60112	AXI4_NON_ZERO_ARQOS	The master is configured to not participate in the Quality-of-Service scheme but ARQOS is not 4'b0000 as it should be.	A8.1.2
AXI4-60113	AXI4_NON_ZERO_AWQOS	The master is configured to not participate in the Quality-of-Service scheme but AWQOS is not 4'b0000 as it should be.	A8.1.2
AXI4-60114	AXI4_OVERLAPPING_REGION	An address-range in the region map overlaps with another address in the region map.	A8.2.1.
AXI4-60115	AXI4_PARAM_READ_DATA_BUS_WIDTH	The value of AXI4_RDATA_WIDTH must be one of 8,16,32,64,128,256,512, or 1024.	A1.3.1
AXI4-60116	AXI4_PARAM_READ_REORDERING_DEPTH_EQUALS_ZERO	The user-supplied *config_read_data_reordering_depth* should be greater than zero.	A5.3.1
AXI4-60117	AXI4_PARAM_READ_REORDERING_DEPTH_EXCEEDS_MAX_ID	The user-supplied *config_read_data_reordering_depth* exceeds the maximum possible value as defined by the AXI4_ID_WIDTH parameter.	A5.3.1
AXI4-60118	AXI4_PARAM_WRITE_DATA_BUS_WIDTH	The value of AXI4_WDATA_WIDTH must be one of 8,16,32,64,128,256,512, or 1024.	A1.3.1
AXI4-60119	AXI4_READ_ALLOCATE_WHEN_NON_MODIFIABLE_12	The RA bit of the cache parameter should not be HIGH when the Modifiable bit is LOW.	A4.4
AXI4-60120	AXI4_READ_ALLOCATE_WHEN_NON_MODIFIABLE_13	The RA bit of the cache parameter should not be HIGH when the Modifiable bit is LOW.	A4.4
AXI4-60121	AXI4_READ_ALLOCATE_WHEN_NON_MODIFIABLE_4	The RA of the cache parameter bit should not be HIGH when the Modifiable bit is LOW.	A4.4
AXI4-60122	AXI4_READ_ALLOCATE_WHEN_NON_MODIFIABLE_5	The RA of the cache parameter bit should not be HIGH when the Modifiable bit is LOW.	A4.4

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60123	AXI4_READ_ALLOCATE_WHEN_NON_MODIFIABLE_8	The RA of the cache parameter bit should not be HIGH when the Modifiable bit is LOW.	A4.4
AXI4-60124	AXI4_READ_ALLOCATE_WHEN_NON_MODIFIABLE_9	The RA of the cache parameter bit should not be HIGH when the Modifiable bit is LOW.	A4.4
AXI4-60125	AXI4_READ_BURST_LENGTH_VIOLATION	The *burst_length* implied by the number of beats actually read does not match the *burst_length* defined by the *master_read_addr_channel_phase*.	
AXI4-60126	AXI4_READ_BURST_MAXIMUM_LENGTH_VIOLATION	256 read data beats were seen without RLAST.	A3.4.1
AXI4-60127	AXI4_READ_BURST_SIZE_VIOLATION	In this read transaction, size has been set too high for the defined data buswidth.	
AXI4-60128	AXI4_READ_DATA_BEFORE_ADDRESS	An unexpected read response has occurred (there are no outstanding read transactions with this id).	A3.3.1
AXI4-60129	AXI4_READ_DATA_CHANGED_BEFORE_RREADY	The value of RDATA has changed from its initial value between the time RVALID was asserted and before RREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60130	AXI4_READ_DATA_UNKN	RDATA has an X value/RDATA has a Z value.	
AXI4-60131	AXI4_READ_EXCLUSIVE_ENCODING_VIOLATION.	A read-only interface does not support exclusive accesses.	A10.2.2
AXI4-60132	AXI4_READ_REORDERING_VIOLATION	The arrival of a read response has exceeded the read reordering depth.	A5.3.1
AXI4-60133	AXI4_READ_RESP_CHANGED_BEFORE_RREADY	The value of RRESP has changed from its initial value between the time RVALID was asserted and before RREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60134	AXI4_READ_TRANSFER_EXCEEDS_ADDRESS_SPACE	This read transfer runs off the edge of the address space defined by AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH.	A10.3.1
AXI4-60135	AXI4_REGION_SMALLER_THAN_4KB	An address-range in the region map is smaller than 4kB.	A8.2.1
AXI4-60136	AXI4_RESERVED_ARBURST_ENCODING	The reserved encoding of 2'b11 should not be used for ARBURST.	A3.4.1
AXI4-60137	AXI4_RESERVED_AWBURST_ENCODING	The reserved encoding of 2'b11 should not be used for AWBURST.	A3.4.1
AXI4-60138	AXI4_RID_CHANGED_BEFORE_RREADY	The value of RID has changed from its initial value between the time RVALID was asserted and before RREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60139	AXI4_RID_UNKN	RID has an X value/RID has a Z value.	
AXI4-60140	AXI4_RLAST_CHANGED_BEFORE_RREADY	The value of RLAST has changed from its initial value between the time RVALID was asserted and before RREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60141	AXI4_RLAST_UNKN	RLAST has an X value/RLAST has a Z value.	
AXI4-60142	AXI4_RREADY_NOT_ASSERTED_AFTER_RVALID	Once RVALID has been asserted RREADY should be asserted in *config_max_latency_RVALID_assertion_to_RREADY* clock periods.	
AXI4-60143	AXI4_RREADY_UNKN	RREADY has an X value/RREADY has a Z value.	
AXI4-60144	AXI4_RRESP_UNKN	RRESP has an X value/RRESP has a Z value.	
AXI4-60145	AXI4_RUSER_CHANGED_BEFORE_RREADY	The value of RUSER has changed from its initial value between the time RVALID was asserted and before RREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60146	AXI4_RUSER_UNKN	RUSER has an X value/RUSER has a Z value.	
AXI4-60147	AXI4_RVALID_DEASSERTED_BEFORE_RREADY	RVALID has been de-asserted before RREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60148	AXI4_RVALID_HIGH_EXITING_RESET	RVALID should have been driven low when exiting reset.	A3.1.2
AXI4-60149	AXI4_RVALID_UNKN	RVALID has an X value/RVALID has a Z value.	
AXI4-60150	AXI4_SLV_ERR_RESP_FOR_ READ	Slave has detected an error for this read transfer (signaled by AXI4_SLVERR).	
AXI4-60151	AXI4_SLV_ERR_RESP_FOR_WRITE	Slave has detected an error for this write transfer (signaled by AXI4_SLVERR).	
AXI4-60152	AXI4_TIMEOUT_WAITING_FOR_READ_RESPONSE	Timed-out waiting for a read response.	A4.6
AXI4-60153	AXI4_TIMEOUT_WAITING_FOR_WRITE_RESPONSE	Timed-out waiting for a write response.	A4.6
AXI4-60154	AXI4_UNALIGNED_ADDRESS_FOR_EXCLUSIVE_READ	Exclusive read accesses must have address aligned to the total number of bytes in the transaction.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60155	AXI4_UNALIGNED_ADDR_FOR_WRAPPING_READ_BURST	Wrapping bursts must have address aligned to the start of the read transfer.	A3.4.1

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60156	AXI4_UNALIGNED_ADDR_FOR_WRAPPING_WRITE_BURST	Wrapping bursts must have address aligned to the start of the write transfer.	A3.4.1
AXI4-60157	AXI4_WDATA_CHANGED_BEFORE_WREADY_ON_INVALID_LANE	On a lane whose strobe is 0, the value of WDATA has changed from its initial value between the time WVALID was asserted and before WREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60158	AXI4_WDATA_CHANGED_BEFORE_WREADY_ON_VALID_LANE	On a lane whose strobe is 1, the value of WDATA has changed from its initial value between the time WVALID was asserted and before WREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60159	AXI4_WLAST_CHANGED_BEFORE_WREADY	The value of WLAST has changed from its initial value between the time WVALID was asserted and before WREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60160	AXI4_WLAST_UNKN	WLAST has an X value/WLAST has a Z value.	
AXI4-60161	AXI4_WREADY_NOT_ASSERTED_AFTER_WVALID	Once WVALID has been asserted WREADY should be asserted in *config_max_latency_WVALID_assertion_to_WREADY* clock periods.	
AXI4-60062	AXI4_WREADY_UNKN	WREADY has an X value/WREADY has a Z value.	
AXI4-60163	AXI4_WRITE_ALLOCATE_WHEN_NON_MODIFIABLE_12	The WA bit of the cache parameter should not be HIGH when the Modifiable bit is LOW.	A4.4
AXI4-60164	AXI4_WRITE_ALLOCATE_WHEN_NON_MODIFIABLE_13	The WA of the cache parameter bit should not be HIGH when the Modifiable bit is LOW.	A4.4
AXI4-60165	AXI4_WRITE_ALLOCATE_WHEN_NON_MODIFIABLE_4	The WA of the cache parameter bit should not be HIGH when the Modifiable bit is LOW.	A4.4
AXI4-60166	AXI4_WRITE_ALLOCATE_WHEN_NON_MODIFIABLE_5	The WA of the cache parameter bit should not be HIGH when the Modifiable bit is LOW.	A4.4
AXI4-60167	AXI4_WRITE_ALLOCATE_WHEN_NON_MODIFIABLE_8	The WA of the cache parameter bit should not be HIGH when the Modifiable bit is LOW.	A4.4
AXI4-60168	AXI4_WRITE_ALLOCATE_WHEN_NON_MODIFIABLE_9	The WA of the cache parameter bit should not be HIGH when the Modifiable bit is LOW.	A4.4
AXI4-60169	AXI4_WRITE_BURST_LENGTH_VIOLATION	The number of data beats in a write transfer should match the value given by AWLEN.	

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60170	AXI4_WRITE_STROBES_LENGTH_VIOLATION	The size of the write_strobes array in a write transfer should match the value given by AWLEN.	
AXI4-60171	AXI4_WRITE_USER_DATA_LENGTH_VIOLATION	The size of the wdata_user_data array in a write transfer should match the value given by AWLEN.	
AXI4-60172	AXI4_WRITE_BURST_MAXIMUM_LENGTH_VIOLATION	256 write data beats were seen without WLAST.	A3.4.1
AXI4-60173	AXI4_WRITE_BURST_SIZE_VIOLATION	In this write transaction size has been set too high for the defined data buswidth.	
AXI4-60174	AXI4_WRITE_DATA_BEFORE_ADDRESS	A write data beat has occurred before the corresponding address phase.	
AXI4-60175	AXI4_WRITE_DATA_UNKN_ON_INVALID_LANE	On a lane whose strobe is 0 WDATA has an X value/WDATA has a Z value.	
AXI4-60176	AXI4_WRITE_DATA_UNKN_ON_VALID_LANE	On a lane whose strobe is 1 WDATA has an X value/WDATA has a Z value.	
AXI4-60177	AXI4_WRITE_EXCLUSIVE_ENCODING_VIOLATION	A write-only interface does not support exclusive accesses.	A10.2.3
AXI4-60178	AXI4_WRITE_RESPONSE_WITHOUT_ADDR_DATA	An unexpected write response has occurred (there are no outstanding write transactions with this id).	
AXI4-60179	AXI4_WRITE_STROBE_FIXED_BURST_VIOLATION	Write strobe(s) incorrect for the address/size of a fixed transfer.	
AXI4-60180	AXI4_WRITE_TRANSFER_EXCEEDS_ADDRESS_SPACE	This write transfer runs off the edge of the address space defined by AXI4_ADDRESS_WIDTH.	A10.3.1
AXI4-60181	AXI4_WRONG_ARREGION_FOR_SLAVE_WITH_SINGLE_ADDRESS_DECODE	The region value should be 4'b0000 for a read from a slave with a single address decode in the region map.	A8.2.1
AXI4-60182	AXI4_WRONG_AWREGION_FOR_SLAVE_WITH_SINGLE_ADDRESS_DECODE	The region value should be 4'b0000 for a write to a slave with a single address decode in the region map.	A8.2.1
AXI4-60183	AXI4_WSTRB_CHANGED_BEFORE_WREADY	The value of WSTRB has changed from its initial value between the time WVALID was asserted and before WREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60184	AXI4_WSTRB_UNKN	WSTRB has an X value/WSTRB has a Z value.	
AXI4-60185	AXI4_WUSER_CHANGED_BEFORE_WREADY	The value of WUSER has changed from its initial value between the time WVALID was asserted and before WREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60186	AXI4_WUSER_UNKN	WUSER has an X value/WUSER has a Z value.	
AXI4-60187	AXI4_WVALID_DEASSERTED_BEFORE_WREADY	WVALID has been de-asserted before WREADY was asserted.	A3.2.1
AXI4-60188	AXI4_WVALID_HIGH_ON_FIRST_CLOCK	A master interface must begin driving WVALID high only at a rising clock edge after ARESETn is HIGH.	A3.1.2
AXI4-60189	AXI4_WVALID_UNKN	WVALID has an X value/WVALID has a Z value.	
AXI4-60190	MVC_FAILED_POSTCONDITION	A postcondition failed.	
AXI4-60191	MVC_FAILED_RECOGNITION	An item failed to be recognized.	
AXI4-60192	AXI4_TIMEOUT_WAITING_FOR_WRITE_DATA	Timed-out waiting for a data phase in write data burst.	A4.6
AXI4-60193	AXI4_EXCL_RD_WHILE_EXCL_WR_IN_PROGRESS_SAME_ID	Master starts an exclusive read burst while exclusive write burst with same ID tag is in progress.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60194	AXI4_EXCL_WR_WHILE_EXCL_RD_IN_PROGRESS_SAME_ID	Master starts an exclusive write burst while exclusive read burst with same ID tag is in progress.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60195	AXI4_DEC_ERR_ILLEGAL_FOR_MAPPED_SLAVE_ADDR	Slave receives a burst to a mapped address but responds with DECERR (signaled by AXI4_DECERR).	A3.4.4
AXI4-60196	AXI4_AWVALID_HIGH_DURING_RESET	AWVALID asserted during the reset state.	A3.1.2
AXI4-60197	AXI4_WVALID_HIGH_DURING_RESET	WVALID asserted during the reset state.	A3.1.2
AXI4-60198	AXI4_BVALID_HIGH_DURING_RESET	BVALID asserted during the reset state.	A3.1.2
AXI4-60199	AXI4_ARVALID_HIGH_DURING_RESET	ARVALID asserted during the reset state.	A3.1.2
AXI4-60200	AXI4_RVALID_HIGH_DURING_RESET	RVALID asserted during the reset state.	A3.1.2
AXI4-60201	AXI4_ARESETn_SIGNAL_Z	Reset signal has a Z value.	
AXI4-60202	AXI4_ARESETn_SIGNAL_X	Reset signal has an X value.	
AXI4-60203	AXI4_TIMEOUT_WAITING_FOR_WRITE_ADDR_AFTER_DATA	Timed-out waiting for a write address phase to be coming after data.	A2.2
AXI4-60204	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_WRITE_BYTES_TRANSFER_EXCEEDS_128	Number of bytes in an exclusive write transaction must be less than or equal to 128.	A7.2.4

Table A-1. AXI4 Assertions (cont.)

Error Code	Error Name	Description	Property Ref
AXI4-60205	AXI4_EXCLUSIVE_WRITE_BYTES_TRANSFER_NOT_POWER_OF_2	Number of bytes of an exclusive write transaction is not a power of 2.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60206	AXI4_UNALIGNED_ADDRESS_FOR_EXCLUSIVE_WRITE	Exclusive write accesses must have address aligned to the total number of bytes in the transaction.	A7.2.4
AXI4-60207	AXI4_RLAST_VIOLATION	RLAST signal should be asserted along with the final transfer of the read data burst.	
AXI4-60208	AXI4_WLAST_ASSERTED_DURING_DATA_PHASE_OTHER_THAN_LAST	Wlast must only be asserted during the last data phase.	A3.4.1
AXI4-60209	AXI4_READ_ISSUING_CAPABILITY_VIOLATION	The number of outstanding Read transactions exceeded the maximum Read issuing capability.	
AXI4-60210	AXI4_WRITE_ISSUING_CAPABILITY_VIOLATION	The number of outstanding Write transactions exceeded the maximum Write issuing capability.	
AXI4-60211	AXI4_COMBINED_ISSUING_CAPABILITY_VIOLATION	The number of outstanding Read and Write transactions exceeded the maximum combined issuing capability.	
AXI4-60212	AXI4_READ_ACCEPTANCE_CAPABILITY_VIOLATION	The number of outstanding Read transactions exceeded the maximum Read acceptance capability.	
AXI4-60213	AXI4_WRITE_ACCEPTANCE_CAPABILITY_VIOLATION	The number of outstanding Write transactions exceeded the maximum Write acceptance capability.	
AXI4-60214	AXI4_COMBINED_ACCEPTANCE_CAPABILITY_VIOLATION	The number of outstanding Read and Write transactions exceeded the maximum combined acceptance capability.	

Third-Party Software for Mentor Verification IP Altera Edition

This section provides information on open source and third-party software that may be included in the Mentor Verification IP Altera Edition software product.

End-User License Agreement

The latest version of the End-User License Agreement is available on-line at:
www.mentor.com/eula

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

USE OF ALL SOFTWARE IS SUBJECT TO LICENSE RESTRICTIONS. CAREFULLY READ THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT BEFORE USING THE PRODUCTS. USE OF SOFTWARE INDICATES CUSTOMER'S COMPLETE AND UNCONDITIONAL ACCEPTANCE OF THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT. ANY ADDITIONAL OR DIFFERENT PURCHASE ORDER TERMS AND CONDITIONS SHALL NOT APPLY.

END-USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("Agreement")

This is a legal agreement concerning the use of Software (as defined in Section 2) and hardware (collectively "Products") between the company acquiring the Products ("Customer"), and the Mentor Graphics entity that issued the corresponding quotation or, if no quotation was issued, the applicable local Mentor Graphics entity ("Mentor Graphics"). Except for license agreements related to the subject matter of this license agreement which are physically signed by Customer and an authorized representative of Mentor Graphics, this Agreement and the applicable quotation contain the parties' entire understanding relating to the subject matter and supersede all prior or contemporaneous agreements. If Customer does not agree to these terms and conditions, promptly return or, in the case of Software received electronically, certify destruction of Software and all accompanying items within five days after receipt of Software and receive a full refund of any license fee paid.

1. **ORDERS, FEES AND PAYMENT.**

1.1. To the extent Customer (or if agreed by Mentor Graphics, Customer's appointed third party buying agent) places and Mentor Graphics accepts purchase orders pursuant to this Agreement ("Order(s)"), each Order will constitute a contract between Customer and Mentor Graphics, which shall be governed solely and exclusively by the terms and conditions of this Agreement, any applicable addenda and the applicable quotation, whether or not these documents are referenced on the Order. Any additional or conflicting terms and conditions appearing on an Order will not be effective unless agreed in writing by an authorized representative of Customer and Mentor Graphics.

1.2. Amounts invoiced will be paid, in the currency specified on the applicable invoice, within 30 days from the date of such invoice. Any past due invoices will be subject to the imposition of interest charges in the amount of one and one-half percent per month or the applicable legal rate currently in effect, whichever is lower. Prices do not include freight, insurance, customs duties, taxes or other similar charges, which Mentor Graphics will state separately in the applicable invoice(s). Unless timely provided with a valid certificate of exemption or other evidence that items are not taxable, Mentor Graphics will invoice Customer for all applicable taxes including, but not limited to, VAT, GST, sales tax and service tax. Customer will make all payments free and clear of, and without reduction for, any withholding or other taxes; any such taxes imposed on payments by Customer hereunder will be Customer's sole responsibility. If Customer appoints a third party to place purchase orders and/or make payments on Customer's behalf, Customer shall be liable for payment under Orders placed by such third party in the event of default.

1.3. All Products are delivered FCA factory (Incoterms 2000), freight prepaid and invoiced to Customer, except Software delivered electronically, which shall be deemed delivered when made available to Customer for download. Mentor Graphics retains a security interest in all Products delivered under this Agreement, to secure payment of the purchase price of such Products, and Customer agrees to sign any documents that Mentor Graphics determines to be necessary or convenient for use in filing or perfecting such security interest. Mentor Graphics' delivery of Software by electronic means is subject to Customer's provision of both a primary and an alternate e-mail address.

2. **GRANT OF LICENSE.** The software installed, downloaded, or otherwise acquired by Customer under this Agreement, including any updates, modifications, revisions, copies, documentation and design data ("Software") are copyrighted, trade secret and confidential information of Mentor Graphics or its licensors, who maintain exclusive title to all Software and retain all rights not expressly granted by this Agreement. Mentor Graphics grants to Customer, subject to payment of applicable license fees, a nontransferable, nonexclusive license to use Software solely: (a) in machine-readable, object-code form (except as provided in Subsection 5.2); (b) for Customer's internal business purposes; (c) for the term of the license; and (d) on the computer hardware and at the site authorized by Mentor Graphics. A site is restricted to a one-half mile (800 meter) radius. Customer may have Software temporarily used by an employee for telecommuting purposes from locations other than a Customer office, such as the employee's residence, an airport or hotel, provided that such employee's primary place of employment is the site where the Software is authorized for use. Mentor Graphics' standard policies and programs, which vary depending on Software, license fees paid or services purchased, apply to the following: (a) relocation of Software; (b) use of Software, which may be limited, for example, to execution of a single session by a single user on the authorized hardware or for a restricted period of time (such limitations may be technically implemented through the use of authorization codes or similar devices); and (c) support services provided, including eligibility to receive telephone support, updates, modifications, and revisions. For the avoidance of doubt, if Customer requests any change or enhancement to Software, whether in the course of receiving support or consulting services, evaluating Software, performing beta testing or otherwise, any inventions, product

improvements, modifications or developments made by Mentor Graphics (at Mentor Graphics' sole discretion) will be the exclusive property of Mentor Graphics.

3. **ESC SOFTWARE.** If Customer purchases a license to use development or prototyping tools of Mentor Graphics' Embedded Software Channel ("ESC"), Mentor Graphics grants to Customer a nontransferable, nonexclusive license to reproduce and distribute executable files created using ESC compilers, including the ESC run-time libraries distributed with ESC C and C++ compiler Software that are linked into a composite program as an integral part of Customer's compiled computer program, provided that Customer distributes these files only in conjunction with Customer's compiled computer program. Mentor Graphics does NOT grant Customer any right to duplicate, incorporate or embed copies of Mentor Graphics' real-time operating systems or other embedded software products into Customer's products or applications without first signing or otherwise agreeing to a separate agreement with Mentor Graphics for such purpose.

4. **BETA CODE.**

4.1. Portions or all of certain Software may contain code for experimental testing and evaluation ("Beta Code"), which may not be used without Mentor Graphics' explicit authorization. Upon Mentor Graphics' authorization, Mentor Graphics grants to Customer a temporary, nontransferable, nonexclusive license for experimental use to test and evaluate the Beta Code without charge for a limited period of time specified by Mentor Graphics. This grant and Customer's use of the Beta Code shall not be construed as marketing or offering to sell a license to the Beta Code, which Mentor Graphics may choose not to release commercially in any form.

4.2. If Mentor Graphics authorizes Customer to use the Beta Code, Customer agrees to evaluate and test the Beta Code under normal conditions as directed by Mentor Graphics. Customer will contact Mentor Graphics periodically during Customer's use of the Beta Code to discuss any malfunctions or suggested improvements. Upon completion of Customer's evaluation and testing, Customer will send to Mentor Graphics a written evaluation of the Beta Code, including its strengths, weaknesses and recommended improvements.

4.3. Customer agrees to maintain Beta Code in confidence and shall restrict access to the Beta Code, including the methods and concepts utilized therein, solely to those employees and Customer location(s) authorized by Mentor Graphics to perform beta testing. Customer agrees that any written evaluations and all inventions, product improvements, modifications or developments that Mentor Graphics conceived or made during or subsequent to this Agreement, including those based partly or wholly on Customer's feedback, will be the exclusive property of Mentor Graphics. Mentor Graphics will have exclusive rights, title and interest in all such property. The provisions of this Subsection 4.3 shall survive termination of this Agreement.

5. **RESTRICTIONS ON USE.**

5.1. Customer may copy Software only as reasonably necessary to support the authorized use. Each copy must include all notices and legends embedded in Software and affixed to its medium and container as received from Mentor Graphics. All copies shall remain the property of Mentor Graphics or its licensors. Customer shall maintain a record of the number and primary location of all copies of Software, including copies merged with other software, and shall make those records available to Mentor Graphics upon request. Customer shall not make Products available in any form to any person other than Customer's employees and on-site contractors, excluding Mentor Graphics competitors, whose job performance requires access and who are under obligations of confidentiality. Customer shall take appropriate action to protect the confidentiality of Products and ensure that any person permitted access does not disclose or use it except as permitted by this Agreement. Customer shall give Mentor Graphics written notice of any unauthorized disclosure or use of the Products as soon as Customer learns or becomes aware of such unauthorized disclosure or use. Except as otherwise permitted for purposes of interoperability as specified by applicable and mandatory local law, Customer shall not reverse-assemble, reverse-compile, reverse-engineer or in any way derive any source code from Software. Log files, data files, rule files and script files generated by or for the Software (collectively "Files"), including without limitation files containing Standard Verification Rule Format ("SVRF") and Tcl Verification Format ("TVF") which are Mentor Graphics' proprietary syntaxes for expressing process rules, constitute or include confidential information of Mentor Graphics. Customer may share Files with third parties, excluding Mentor Graphics competitors, provided that the confidentiality of such Files is protected by written agreement at least as well as Customer protects other information of a similar nature or importance, but in any case with at least reasonable care. Customer may use Files containing SVRF or TVF only with Mentor Graphics products. Under no circumstances shall Customer use Software or Files or allow their use for the purpose of developing, enhancing or marketing any product that is in any way competitive with Software, or disclose to any third party the results of, or information pertaining to, any benchmark.

5.2. If any Software or portions thereof are provided in source code form, Customer will use the source code only to correct software errors and enhance or modify the Software for the authorized use. Customer shall not disclose or permit disclosure of source code, in whole or in part, including any of its methods or concepts, to anyone except Customer's employees or contractors, excluding Mentor Graphics competitors, with a need to know. Customer shall not copy or compile source code in any manner except to support this authorized use.

5.3. Customer may not assign this Agreement or the rights and duties under it, or relocate, sublicense or otherwise transfer the Products, whether by operation of law or otherwise ("Attempted Transfer"), without Mentor Graphics' prior written consent and payment of Mentor Graphics' then-current applicable relocation and/or transfer fees. Any Attempted Transfer without Mentor Graphics' prior written consent shall be a material breach of this Agreement and may, at Mentor Graphics' option, result in the immediate termination of the Agreement and/or the licenses granted under this Agreement. The terms of this Agreement, including without limitation the licensing and assignment provisions, shall be binding upon Customer's permitted successors in interest and assigns.

5.4. The provisions of this Section 5 shall survive the termination of this Agreement.

6. **SUPPORT SERVICES.** To the extent Customer purchases support services, Mentor Graphics will provide Customer updates and technical support for the Products, at the Customer site(s) for which support is purchased, in accordance with Mentor Graphics' then current End-User Support Terms located at http://supportnet.mentor.com/about/legal/.

7. **AUTOMATIC CHECK FOR UPDATES; PRIVACY.** Technological measures in Software may communicate with servers of Mentor Graphics or its contractors for the purpose of checking for and notifying the user of updates and to ensure that the Software in use is licensed in compliance with this Agreement. Mentor Graphics will not collect any personally identifiable data in this process and will not disclose any data collected to any third party without the prior written consent of Customer, except to Mentor Graphics' outside attorneys or as may be required by a court of competent jurisdiction.

8. **LIMITED WARRANTY.**

8.1. Mentor Graphics warrants that during the warranty period its standard, generally supported Products, when properly installed, will substantially conform to the functional specifications set forth in the applicable user manual. Mentor Graphics does not warrant that Products will meet Customer's requirements or that operation of Products will be uninterrupted or error free. The warranty period is 90 days starting on the 15th day after delivery or upon installation, whichever first occurs. Customer must notify Mentor Graphics in writing of any nonconformity within the warranty period. For the avoidance of doubt, this warranty applies only to the initial shipment of Software under an Order and does not renew or reset, for example, with the delivery of (a) Software updates or (b) authorization codes or alternate Software under a transaction involving Software re-mix. This warranty shall not be valid if Products have been subject to misuse, unauthorized modification or improper installation. MENTOR GRAPHICS' ENTIRE LIABILITY AND CUSTOMER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY SHALL BE, AT MENTOR GRAPHICS' OPTION, EITHER (A) REFUND OF THE PRICE PAID UPON RETURN OF THE PRODUCTS TO MENTOR GRAPHICS OR (B) MODIFICATION OR REPLACEMENT OF THE PRODUCTS THAT DO NOT MEET THIS LIMITED WARRANTY, PROVIDED CUSTOMER HAS OTHERWISE COMPLIED WITH THIS AGREEMENT. MENTOR GRAPHICS MAKES NO WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO: (A) SERVICES; (B) PRODUCTS PROVIDED AT NO CHARGE; OR (C) BETA CODE; ALL OF WHICH ARE PROVIDED "AS IS."

8.2. THE WARRANTIES SET FORTH IN THIS SECTION 8 ARE EXCLUSIVE. NEITHER MENTOR GRAPHICS NOR ITS LICENSORS MAKE ANY OTHER WARRANTIES EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, WITH RESPECT TO PRODUCTS PROVIDED UNDER THIS AGREEMENT. MENTOR GRAPHICS AND ITS LICENSORS SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY.

9. **LIMITATION OF LIABILITY.** EXCEPT WHERE THIS EXCLUSION OR RESTRICTION OF LIABILITY WOULD BE VOID OR INEFFECTIVE UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL MENTOR GRAPHICS OR ITS LICENSORS BE LIABLE FOR INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING LOST PROFITS OR SAVINGS) WHETHER BASED ON CONTRACT, TORT OR ANY OTHER LEGAL THEORY, EVEN IF MENTOR GRAPHICS OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN NO EVENT SHALL MENTOR GRAPHICS' OR ITS LICENSORS' LIABILITY UNDER THIS AGREEMENT EXCEED THE AMOUNT RECEIVED FROM CUSTOMER FOR THE HARDWARE, SOFTWARE LICENSE OR SERVICE GIVING RISE TO THE CLAIM. IN THE CASE WHERE NO AMOUNT WAS PAID, MENTOR GRAPHICS AND ITS LICENSORS SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER. THE PROVISIONS OF THIS SECTION 9 SHALL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

10. **HAZARDOUS APPLICATIONS.** CUSTOMER ACKNOWLEDGES IT IS SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR TESTING ITS PRODUCTS USED IN APPLICATIONS WHERE THE FAILURE OR INACCURACY OF ITS PRODUCTS MIGHT RESULT IN DEATH OR PERSONAL INJURY ("HAZARDOUS APPLICATIONS"). NEITHER MENTOR GRAPHICS NOR ITS LICENSORS SHALL BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES RESULTING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OF MENTOR GRAPHICS PRODUCTS IN OR FOR HAZARDOUS APPLICATIONS. THE PROVISIONS OF THIS SECTION 10 SHALL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

11. **INDEMNIFICATION.** CUSTOMER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS MENTOR GRAPHICS AND ITS LICENSORS FROM ANY CLAIMS, LOSS, COST, DAMAGE, EXPENSE OR LIABILITY, INCLUDING ATTORNEYS' FEES, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OF PRODUCTS AS DESCRIBED IN SECTION 10. THE PROVISIONS OF THIS SECTION 11 SHALL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

12. **INFRINGEMENT.**

12.1. Mentor Graphics will defend or settle, at its option and expense, any action brought against Customer in the United States, Canada, Japan, or member state of the European Union which alleges that any standard, generally supported Product acquired by Customer hereunder infringes a patent or copyright or misappropriates a trade secret in such jurisdiction. Mentor Graphics will pay costs and damages finally awarded against Customer that are attributable to the action. Customer understands and agrees that as conditions to Mentor Graphics' obligations under this section Customer must: (a) notify Mentor Graphics promptly in writing of the action; (b) provide Mentor Graphics all reasonable information and assistance to settle or defend the action; and (c) grant Mentor Graphics sole authority and control of the defense or settlement of the action.

12.2. If a claim is made under Subsection 12.1 Mentor Graphics may, at its option and expense, (a) replace or modify the Product so that it becomes noninfringing; (b) procure for Customer the right to continue using the Product; or (c) require the return of the Product and refund to Customer any purchase price or license fee paid, less a reasonable allowance for use.

12.3. Mentor Graphics has no liability to Customer if the action is based upon: (a) the combination of Software or hardware with any product not furnished by Mentor Graphics; (b) the modification of the Product other than by Mentor Graphics; (c) the use of other than a current unaltered release of Software; (d) the use of the Product as part of an infringing process; (e) a product that Customer makes, uses, or sells; (f) any Beta Code or Product provided at no charge; (g) any software provided by Mentor Graphics' licensors who do not provide such indemnification to Mentor Graphics' customers; or (h) infringement by Customer that is deemed willful. In the case of (h), Customer shall reimburse Mentor Graphics for its reasonable attorney fees and other costs related to the action.

12.4. THIS SECTION 12 IS SUBJECT TO SECTION 9 ABOVE AND STATES THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF MENTOR GRAPHICS AND ITS LICENSORS FOR DEFENSE, SETTLEMENT AND DAMAGES, AND CUSTOMER'S SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY, WITH RESPECT TO ANY ALLEGED PATENT OR COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT OR TRADE SECRET MISAPPROPRIATION BY ANY PRODUCT PROVIDED UNDER THIS AGREEMENT.

13. **TERMINATION AND EFFECT OF TERMINATION.** If a Software license was provided for limited term use, such license will automatically terminate at the end of the authorized term.

13.1. Mentor Graphics may terminate this Agreement and/or any license granted under this Agreement immediately upon written notice if Customer: (a) exceeds the scope of the license or otherwise fails to comply with the licensing or confidentiality provisions of this Agreement, or (b) becomes insolvent, files a bankruptcy petition, institutes proceedings for liquidation or winding up or enters into an agreement to assign its assets for the benefit of creditors. For any other material breach of any provision of this Agreement, Mentor Graphics may terminate this Agreement and/or any license granted under this Agreement upon 30 days written notice if Customer fails to cure the breach within the 30 day notice period. Termination of this Agreement or any license granted hereunder will not affect Customer's obligation to pay for Products shipped or licenses granted prior to the termination, which amounts shall be payable immediately upon the date of termination.

13.2. Upon termination of this Agreement, the rights and obligations of the parties shall cease except as expressly set forth in this Agreement. Upon termination, Customer shall ensure that all use of the affected Products ceases, and shall return hardware and either return to Mentor Graphics or destroy Software in Customer's possession, including all copies and documentation, and certify in writing to Mentor Graphics within ten business days of the termination date that Customer no longer possesses any of the affected Products or copies of Software in any form.

14. **EXPORT.** The Products provided hereunder are subject to regulation by local laws and United States government agencies, which prohibit export or diversion of certain products and information about the products to certain countries and certain persons. Customer agrees that it will not export Products in any manner without first obtaining all necessary approval from appropriate local and United States government agencies.

15. **U.S. GOVERNMENT LICENSE RIGHTS.** Software was developed entirely at private expense. All Software is commercial computer software within the meaning of the applicable acquisition regulations. Accordingly, pursuant to US FAR 48 CFR 12.212 and DFAR 48 CFR 227.7202, use, duplication and disclosure of the Software by or for the U.S. Government or a U.S. Government subcontractor is subject solely to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement, except for provisions which are contrary to applicable mandatory federal laws.

16. **THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY.** Mentor Graphics Corporation, Mentor Graphics (Ireland) Limited, Microsoft Corporation and other licensors may be third party beneficiaries of this Agreement with the right to enforce the obligations set forth herein.

17. **REVIEW OF LICENSE USAGE.** Customer will monitor the access to and use of Software. With prior written notice and during Customer's normal business hours, Mentor Graphics may engage an internationally recognized accounting firm to review Customer's software monitoring system and records deemed relevant by the internationally recognized accounting firm to confirm Customer's compliance with the terms of this Agreement or U.S. or other local export laws. Such review may include FLEXlm or FLEXnet (or successor product) report log files that Customer shall capture and provide at Mentor Graphics' request. Customer shall make records available in electronic format and shall fully cooperate with data gathering to support the license review. Mentor Graphics shall bear the expense of any such review unless a material non-compliance is revealed. Mentor Graphics shall treat as confidential information all information gained as a result of any request or review and shall only use or disclose such information as required by law or to enforce its rights under this Agreement. The provisions of this Section 17 shall survive the termination of this Agreement.

18. **CONTROLLING LAW, JURISDICTION AND DISPUTE RESOLUTION.** The owners of certain Mentor Graphics intellectual property licensed under this Agreement are located in Ireland and the United States. To promote consistency around the world, disputes shall be resolved as follows: excluding conflict of laws rules, this Agreement shall be governed by and construed under the laws of the State of Oregon, USA, if Customer is located in North or South America, and the laws of Ireland if Customer is located outside of North or South America. All disputes arising out of or in relation to this Agreement shall be submitted to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of Portland, Oregon when the laws of Oregon apply, or Dublin, Ireland when the laws of Ireland apply. Notwithstanding the foregoing, all disputes in Asia arising out of or in relation to this Agreement shall be resolved by arbitration in Singapore before a single arbitrator to be appointed by the chairman of the Singapore International Arbitration Centre ("SIAC") to be conducted in the English language, in accordance with the Arbitration Rules of the SIAC in effect at the time of the dispute, which rules are deemed to be incorporated by reference in this section. This section shall not

restrict Mentor Graphics' right to bring an action against Customer in the jurisdiction where Customer's place of business is located. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods does not apply to this Agreement.

19. **SEVERABILITY.** If any provision of this Agreement is held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be void, invalid, unenforceable or illegal, such provision shall be severed from this Agreement and the remaining provisions will remain in full force and effect.

20. **MISCELLANEOUS.** This Agreement contains the parties' entire understanding relating to its subject matter and supersedes all prior or contemporaneous agreements, including but not limited to any purchase order terms and conditions. Some Software may contain code distributed under a third party license agreement that may provide additional rights to Customer. Please see the applicable Software documentation for details. This Agreement may only be modified in writing by authorized representatives of the parties. Waiver of terms or excuse of breach must be in writing and shall not constitute subsequent consent, waiver or excuse.

Rev. 100615, Part No. 246066